

Tuin Bunterloo.s Roa,

## ^

NE W S Y S TE M

OF
$M I L I T A R Y$
DI S CI P LINE,
FOUNDED UPON PRINCIPLE.


By a GENERA, OFFICER.

$\begin{array}{llllllllllll}P & H & I & L & A & D & E & L & P & H & I & A\end{array}$
Printed and sold by R. AITKEN, Printer and Bookseller, opposite the London Coffee-House, Front-Street.
M.DCc.LxXVI.

Price, in Boards, Oik Dollar, -Bound, Ter Shillings.



## THE

## PREFACE.

IT being an obfervation, that the more confident a man is of his own capacity, with fo much the greater refolution he will act; and, on the other hand, it being alfo obferved, that nothing difcourages a man more, or intimidates him fooner, than a knowledge, or fuppofition, of his not being upon equal terms with his adverfary: Hence then it is that difcipline becomes neceffary; in order to inftruct foldiers in fuch a manner, that the knowledge which they acquire in a dexterous ufe and management of their arms, and in a fkilful arrangement of themfelves, may ferve, as well to encourage them to a due difcharge of their duty, as to prevent their being intimidated, by confidering themfelves inferior to thofe with whom they are to contend.

To frame a fyftem for thefe important purpofes, it will be indifpenfably neceffary to keep three objects conftantly in view. The firft is; that it be founded upon principle, in order to give it weight and ftability. The next is, that nothing whimfical, hypothetical, or trifling appear in it; which may prompt a man to receive it with contempt or indifference, and thence to difregard it. And the laft is, that it be calculated for the emotions of the human heart, or for what the generality of men are moft capable of effecting in time of action; and how far this laft alone is truly neeeffary, let us, but for a moment, only fuppofe ourfelves in that fituation, where every fcene, that can dethrone
our fortitude, or can fink us into timid apprehenfions, prefents itfelf; and, where nothing is left but proud reflection to invigorate and keep us up; we fhall then quickly perceive the neceffity for that fimplicity of difcipline, which is moft practical in itfelf, and beft adapted to thofe trying circumftances.

Upon the above plan then I have founded the following fy ftem, being perfuaded, that if an exercife is not calculated for, and fuited to thefe important purpofes, it will never produce the effect required. But, as every fyftem fhould be fupported and governed in itfelf, by particular laws or principles, that it may fhun the appellation of a whimfical or fpeculative performance, I have therefore obferved that rule, heping it may ferve, as well to recommend, as to give weight to the plan I have chofen. And as this performance, which I now take the liberty of offering, is but an attempt calculated to point out how the military; like all other fciences, may be refcued from caprice, and eftablifhed upon principle; and as I am led to believe, that it is the firft of its kind that has ever been written, I therefore hope for the greater indulgence, and that it will to the çandid fuggeft an apology for any defects or inaccuracies it may contain; there being throughout the whole a great deal of new matter.

And as all fciences have their peculiar graduates, as well to inftruct pupils in their rudirnents, as to bring them on to the higher elements of their profeffion; I have thcrefore allotted to the corporal, to the ferjeant, and to the adjutant, their different degrees of inftruction, the better, that each may be refponfible for thofe committed to his charge; and by that means, that the exercife may be more correctly and expeditiounty learned. The copporal, for inftance, is, on his part, to

## THE PREFACE.

teach his men; to Atand, to face, to march, and to wheel. The ferjeant is to inftruct his men in the $u f_{e}$ and management of their arms. And the adjutant is to inform thofe intrufted to his care in the different arrangements of the line, the column, and the fquare.

By thus affigning to the corporal, to the ferjeant, and to the adjutant, the rudimental parts of the exercife, the time of exercife will, by that means, be confiderably fhortened; as there will then be no occafion for a repetition of thofe initiating forms; when the men come to be exercifed by a commiffioned officer, they being already grounded in thofe points by the proper people. In deed, where fuch minutie are dwelt upon by an officei, I cannot help thinking that fuch a conduct is, not only acting out of charafler, by ferving to level and confound diftinctions; but, in itfelf, carries much the fame kind of propriety with it, as to tell a man, " You once had occafion in your childhood for leading frings, and therefore you fhould never appear without them." But however, though I have known many. an officer acquire a confiderable reputation by that means, he ought neverthelefs to preferve a fuitable dignity for himfelf, and accordingly, he fhould leave thofe littleneffes to thofe below him, it being fufficient that where he finds any. of his men aukward or defective in their exercife, to remand them at once to the proper drill, whether of the corporal, the ferjeant, or the adjutant, for better inftruction.

After the different exercifes, of the corporal, the ferjeant, and the adjutant, are gone through, I then introduce the whole excrife complete, as it is to be performed by word of command fiom the major, or any other commiffioned officer, annexing, for brevity
fake, a reference of explanation to each word of command; in order, as well to avoid a repetition of the fame thing, as to indicate in the proper place, the number of motions belonging to each word of command, defcribing with it the ufe and intent of the operation itfelf.

The following exercife.I have divided into two parts, diftinguifhing the one by the appellation of The Parade Exercife; and the other by that of The Field Exercife. The Parade Exercife is then to confilt of the ceremonial parts of the fervice; and of fuch other. introductory parts, as of neceffity lead to, and are blended with, the Field Exercife. And the Field Exercife is to comprehend fuch operations, as are necefià ry to be performed againft the enemy, as different exigencies may there require. Why I have adopted the terms, Parade and Field exercife, is for this reafon; as being words in themfelves, which are not only infinitely more fignificant and comprehenfive, but convey by far a clearer idea of the operations fuitable to thofe places, than the old terms, Manual and Platoon exercife; which are, at the beft, but terms only reconcileable by ufe, but not by fenfe.

In our prefent exercife there are many things, which, I confefs, I cannot approve, as being in themfelves either impracticable, or extremely inconvenient. Some of which I have altered, and others I have rejected; and as to what I have fubltituted, to fuch I have fubjoined my reafons.

In this work J have introduced a new method of Locking-up, finding, in my opinion, our prefent form extremely defective, and liable to great diforder and inconvenience.

In the different arrangement of the Line, the Column, and the Square, I have likewife introduced fome amendments and alterations. In the Line, I have kept one object conftantly in view, namely, to poft the officers where they can be mof ferviceable; by which mean's the battalion will at all times be kept up in a clofe, compact, and good order, whether in ftanding, advancing, or retreating; and, at the fame time, free of all incumbrance.

In treating of the Column, I have endeavoured to point out the various ufes and purpofes of it; Shewing how and on what occafion it is to be formed, whether it is then to confift of ranks, of files, or compounded of both.

And in refpect to the Square, I have touched upon fome capital defects, not only in our prefent niethod of forming it, but in making the platoons or divifions, which are appointed to cover or protect the angles, to retire on firing into the fquare itfelf. To obviate thefe matters, I have offered an amendment, by which I think the fquare will be rendered both formidable and fecure. I have alfo directed, how and in what fituation it is to be formed, and how to reduce it when the occafion ceafes. And in pointing out the ufes of it, I have explained the different capacities of fquares to each other, according to the number of battalions of which each is compofed; there being but very few, who can otherwife comprehend this neceffary piece of knowledge, that are not poffeffed of fome fmall degree of mathematical learning.

In the different operations of the above arrangements. I have fhewn how the feveral movements are to be effected, by fuitable and diftinct fignals of the drum; being well fatisfied of no better method, by which
troops can more effectually be directed in time of action. A due obfervance of which is, I may venture to pronounce, one of the mof principal excellencies in difcipline, and I could therefore wifh to fee it more attended to; for certain it is, that the monotony, which will do for a cool and calm parade, will by no means pe proper for the hot and turbulent element of boiftèroits action; confequently, a fuitable variety of fignals is neceffary to obferve and adopt.

I have concluded this treatife with an appendix, containing rules; maxims, and obfervations for the government, conduct and difcipline of an army. They are undoubtedly, for fo comprehenfive a purpofe, very defective in themfelves. I lament that my experience had not enabled me to render them more complete ; but I offer them with a good intent, fubmitting and referring the whole to the judgment of my brother officers.


## OBSERVATIONS

ON, THE

## DRESS, ARMS, and ACCOUTREMENTS,

# $\mathrm{S}, \mathrm{O}$ <br> L D <br> I E <br> R. 

## CH A P. I.

Sect. I. Of DreSs.

IT is with the military, as with all other profeffions, if the individuals of which are not properly appointed, and a fuitable provifion made for them, they will never be able to acquit themfelves, or to give the fatisfaction which may be required of them. And as this pofition is univerfally admitted, I conclude it will not be improper in this place to make forme obfervatons on the Drefs, Arms, and Accoutrements, of our Soldiers; and to offer forme amendments and a!terations in thole articles, where I hall judge them to be defective.

The Drefs then of a Soldier fhould ferve in the firft place, to preferve health. Next, to give fprightlinefs and appearance to the man, and to characterize him in his profeffion. And laftly, to give reputation to

## 10

the fervice, in which he is engaged. Nor ought it to be lefs calculated for the purpofe of Convenience, having it fo contrived, as neither to obftruct or impede him in his motions; nor to occafion trouble and delay, where equipment is required in the eafieft manner, and in the fhorteft time. The above being the chief ends of a military Drefs, what I fhall offer concerning them, I propofe to deliver under the fotlowing articles; namely, Cloathing, Convenience, and Appearance.

## Art. I. Of Cloathing.

The feveral articles of cloathing ought, in them* felves, to be fubftantial, ftrong, and good; and adapted to the country or climate in which the foldier is to ferve : fince the prefervation of health, which is the chief intent of cloathing, will every where be found the greateft Economy. His cloaths, therefore, ought to be well made and put together; and fufficient to laft, by ordinary repairs, the intended time. Nor fhould they be incumbered with any frivolous and finical ornaments, which are foon worn out, and eafily defaced; cipecially, where fuitable materials cannot conveniently be had to mend or reinftate them.

## Art. II. Of Convenience.

It is an eftablifhed maxim, that nothing is military which is in itfelf either tedious or inconvenient; confequently, the beft materials for drefs, if not well calculated for that end, lofe of their eftimation; and, inftead of their being convenient and fatisfactory, become troublefome and difguftful. Now, to apply this obfervation,
obfervation, I fhall bring it home to ourfelves; our materials then, are in general tolerably good, but the purpofes to which they are converted will admit of fome principal exceptions, and thofe are as follow.

The firft thing, then, which I fhall touch upon, is our Grenadier-cap, which is fo badly contrived, as neither to be fit for ufe or fervice. The height of it above the head is fo enormous, that any inclination or agile motion of the body, will caufe it immediately to tumble off. If the country, through which the man is ordered to proceed, happens to be either bufhy or woody, off gaes the cap at every branch, briar, or twig, which comes in its way; and the fame inconvenience he meets with from every other object that it ftrikes againft. If the weather be windy, the cap is every now and then blown off; or it be dufty and fcorching, it affords no fort of fhelter whatever to the face and eyes; or if the weather be rainy, it yiehds as little covering to the neck and fhoulders. In fhort, it is fo aukward a piece of apparel, as to have nothing whatever to recommend or reconcile it to us, but our being accuftomed to it; except, like the whifkers of old, it may be deemed neceffary to frighten an enemy, which I believe is a circumftance now-a-days, upon which no foldier will place the flighteft dependance.

The Hat is another article of drefs, which, though infinitely preferable to the cap, yet is not without fome weighty objections; for by its projection over the fhoulders, it is extremely incommodious to the man, when in the ranks or under arms, it being then liable, either by his own motions or by thofe of others, to be cafily thrown off, which frequently happens. Nor is it much lefs troublefome than the cap, in a bufhy or woody country, or in windy weather; as thofe incidents
do ever occafion it, only to fall off, but to teafe and incommode the man; befides its being of that fort of apparel, which is eafily disfigured by the cocks lofing their fet and form, and then nothing is more unbecoming.

Thefe being fome of the principal objections to the Cap and Hat, the remedy which I would offer in order to remove them, is to fubftitute in their room, the fmall tight clofe leather Helmet, made not only fufficiently ftrong to refift the blow of a fword, but to have a curtain appending to it, which may be occafionally ufed, either to roll up in dry weather, or in wet to let down for the purpofe of preferving the neck and fhoulders from the rain. Befides the addition of the Curtain, I would alfo have that of a Flap or Frontifpiece to let likewife down before, for the convenience of faving the eyes from duft, and from the heat and rays of the fun, which are circumftances, if not guarded againft, that muft ever be affeeting to the fight of the man.

The Roter about the neck is another part of drefs to which I very much object: becaufe the man alone cannot, in that particular, drefs himfelf, but muft have the affiftance of another to help him, which muft be allowed a very inconvenient circumftance. And, by having his neck fo fwathed about with fo long a bandage, the circulation of the blood is confequently obftructed; by which means, it is no uncommon thing to obferve, when men are under arms, but more efpecially upon a march, that they frequently drop down into fits; and often expire.

To prevent circumftances fo bad in themfelves, I would recommend, inftead of the Roler, a Stock with clafps, which the man ean, of himfelf, inımodiately
diately put on or take off, and loofen or tighten at pleafure.

The make of the Coat is another article to which I have much diflike, on account of the great heap and load of fkirts appending to it, which are neither long enough to keep the men warm in cold weather, nor fhort enough to render him active and cool where agility and labour is required of him, and ferving only to fatigue and encumber him in all his operations, and to be of no ufe or fervice whatever to him on any occafion; befides the injury thofe fkirts do to his health, fhould he happen to lie down when they are wet, either upon his guard-bed or in his tent. In fhort, the inconvenience of the coat in this particular, is fo well known to all thofe who follow any active laborious way of life, that they are feldom or never feen, while at work, with their coats on. To purfue then an example fo well founded, both upon reafon and experience, and to avoid the inconveniencies above mentioned, I would fubftitute inftead of the coat, the common tight light Jacket.

Our Spatterda/bes, are another part of drefs, to which I have likewife great objections. The Spatterdafhes I mean, are thofe made of canvafs, to button tight, and to come half way up the thigh, with upwards of two dozen of buttons to each. I need not reprefent how long a time it will take up to put on a pair of thofe Spatterdafhes, as it will eafily be conceived. But befides the trouble of this tedious operation, there is the well known perplexity of every now and then tearing open a button-hole, and the pulling off a button; and by the delay thus accidentally occafioned in the mending of which, I have known
known many a good foldier punifhed for the not appearing at the time appointed. But, befides this great inconvenience in putting them.on, there is another very ftrong objection to them; for by the leg and part of the thigh being thus buttoned and braced up, the agility at the knee is of courfe obftructed. And as the legs of moft men will, on or after long walking, fwella little, the pain then arifing becomes quite. intellerable, by the want of room in the Spatterdafla for the limb to eafe itfelf. And next, by their being made of canvafs, they are but very ill calculated to defend the legs againft briars and thorns; befides their being foon worn out about the ankles and knees, by the continual ftrefs and friction which they are expofed to in thofe parts.

Now what I would offer to obviate thofe feveral inconveniences, is to fubftitute the fort of Spatterdafhes commonly worn by gentlemen in riding. They are made of fupple leather, and toped with a piece of what is ftrong and ftiff. They come. fo high as to cover the caps. of the knees, and there fit as clofe and tight as light boots commonly do; but I would have them to come rather higher, the better to defend the knees, and to preferve the breeches, when the men come to kneel, either at their exercife, or on any other occafion. Each of thefe fort of Spatterdalhes has but two buttons, one juft below the knee, and the other clofe to the foot Thofe buttons are made of a bit of flat iron, fo as to turn and make faft after they have entered a fmall iron button-hole. And in order to keep them clofe to the legs, there is alfo added to each edge of the Spatterdafh, a piece of frong flated wire, fafened at each end to the buttons and button holes. The advantages of thofe
thofe Spatterdafhes are, that they are fo foon put on, as farce to exceed the time of half a minute, and are fo pliant to the legs, as to give way to them occafionally. But it may be objected, that the expence of them will be too great for Soldiers. I anfwer not, for as they will laft confiderably longer than thofe made of canvafs, they will in the end be found to be much cheaper.

The Drefs of the Hair is another very effential article in point of convenience and cleanlinefs, of which we feem altogether unmindful; having at prefent no other form, but either the Tuck, the Cue, or the Club. The time of adjufting either is evidently fo very tedious and troublefome, of which the men themfelves are fo fenfible, that in order to avoid that inconvenience, and to have more time for other purpofes, they frequently let their hair remain in one or other of thofe forms for fome days together, giving it occafionally, without opening and combing it, a fort of outward flight dreffing, by way of concealing their neglect from their officers; the ill confequence of which is, that the man by not daily combing his head, the flin contracts, in a fmall fpace of time, not only ftagnated humours, which break out into fcabs and ulcers, but an accumulated mixture of filth, dirt, 'and vermin, which proves as pernicious to the man himfelf, as it becomes infectious to others.

To prevent on one hand fo great an inconvenience, and on the other to guard againft the bad confequence attending it, I would have the hair cut fhort and tapering, and to come no lower than the upper edge of the $S$ ock, by which means the head will eafily be kept clean and cool, and the inconvenience of a tedicus drefs will be as much avoided.

## Art. III. Of Appearance.

Thc Appearance of a Soldier confifts in being always dreffed in character, and conformable to the rules of his corps. He ought therefore to appear clean and neat in his perfon : his hair well combed; his hat well brufhed and cocked; his cloaths in good order, having neither dirt, duft or fpots upon them ; and his linen, ftockings, fhoes and buckles, clean and in repair. In fhort, every thing about him fhould appear good calculated for decency and ufe, and adapted to the times, whether upon or off Duty; or whether in the condition of the private or the public man.

The advantages of this Appearance are many': It gives a reputation to the fervice and corps in which he is, and is a ftrong inducement to others to enter into it ; and, above all, it naturally infpires a man with a pride of fpirit, which is the greateft prefervative againft mean and unbecoming actions.

There is another article in the Drefs of a Soldier, which, above all others, contributes the moft to a ftately carriage of his perfon, and which I think is not in general fufficiently attended to ; I mean, the wearing well of the Hat. I have often lamented an overfight of fuch confequence, there being no one part of Drefs which makes a man appear to greater advantage than that alone; it is a circumftance fo friking in itfelf, that it commonly conveys a charasteriftical idea of the man ; and according to the impreffion his appearance fo makes, a conclufion is often formed of him. The rule therefore I fhall give is as follows :

That the Hat do fit horizontally upon the head, and that it be worn fo low on the forehead as to prefs a little
down upon the cyebrows, letting the forccock be turned withal a little to the left, by way of an air.

In wearing the hat as thus directed, there is an advantage as well as an ornament in it. It may be obferved, that when a man ftoops or holds down his head with his hat off, the very decline of his face will prevent, in a great meafure, his having an elevated or horizontal view; and fhould he, in that attitude, wear his hat according to the above rule, it is as evident that his view will be the more obftructed by the intervention of the cock of the hat. This being the cafe, and he finding the inconvenience of it, he will naturally, in order to avoid it, hold up his head that he may have the advantage of a better view ; and by fo holding up his head the confequence will as naturally lead him to carry his body erect, which becomes an ornament to his perfon. Hence then it is, that there is no inftance where a man wears his hat preffed well down upon his eyebrows whofe carriage has been otherwife than conftantly erect.

Indeed there is, befides the above, another very confiderable advantage in this wear of the hat; it may likerwife be obferved that the forehead is the only inexpreffive part of the whole face, every other feature having both action and fignificance in it. Hence it is, that by the forehead being thus hid by the hat and nothing prefented to view but the animated parts of the face, the man appears no lefs confiderable in his afpect than elevated in his perfon.

As to the form of cocking the hat, I acknowledge my felf a little timorous about prefcribing a rule for it, there being fo great a variety of opinions on that head; but were I to choofe I fhould prefer that cock which would keep its form beft and longeft, and at the fame time caufe a man to look fprightly in his appearance.

## Sect. II. . Of Arms.

The Arms of a Foot-Soldier confift of a firelock and bayonet, which, when fixed or joined together, become the moft formidable weapon that we know of, being capable of vaft execution either at a great or at a fimall diftance, and when thus united anfwer all the purpofes of a miffile or hand weapon; but, however, as an active ufe of any weapon will chiefly depend upon a proper conftruction of it, it therefore follows, that arms in themfelves will be more or lefs ferviceable, and that foldiers will have the power of managing them in a better or worfe manner in proportion to the degree of the make, whether that confifts in length, weight, or convenience ; and for this reafon I fhall venture to point out fome capital defects in the conftructions of our firelock and bayonet, with a view of offering a remedy, and with the hopes it will merit fome attention.

## Art. I. Of the Bayonet.

We have for the inake of the Bayonet no other rule or gage than to fit it to a particular firelock to which it of courfe belongs : Now as the barrels of different firelocks vary in thicknefs, and as the Sights placed upon them at the muzzle by which the bayonets fix, vary no lefs in fize and pofition, fo the bore of the fockets of the bayonets, and the fixing grooves made in them, muft vary accordingly in all or any of thefe particulars ; therefore it is that fcarce any bayonet can be found that will fit any other firelock than that for which it was made; the difadvantage of which
is this, that as foldiers are obliged in camp, on guard, or on out-pofts, to keep their bayonets conftantly by them while their firelocks are frequently laid promifcuoufly together in a bell-tent, or in fome other appointed place; .I fay then, that fhould the men have an immediate occafion for their firelocks, they could not fo circumftanced, have fufficient time to receive or take thofe refpectively belonging to themfelves, nor indeed would it be proper to wait, left, before fuch a diftribution could be effected, an opportunity might be loft, or the confequence prove fatal ; therefore as each man muft in prudence take the firft that comes to hand, the odds will then be very great, that the firelock which he takes does not belong to himfelf, and of courfe that the bayonet which he has by him does not fit it, and fhould that be the cafe, the misfortune arifing may prove irreparable.

To remedy then fo great a defect I would propofe, that as there is an eftablifhed caliber for all firelocks in the fervice, and as no reafon can be affigned why one firelock fhould be made thicker or thinner in metal at the muzzle than another; I would therefore have all firelocks made alike in that particular: And next, as every bayonet fixes by means of the fight upon the barrel, I would alfo have all thofe fights made of equal fizes, and placed at equal diftances from their refpective muzzles; by which means, as there would then be of courfe an eftablifhed gage for the fockets and fixtures of all bayonets, every bayonet would confequently fit every firelock in the fervice, which would remedy the above defect, and prevent any ill confequence that may arife from it.

My next objection is to the great difadvantage arifing from the unneceffary weight of the Bayonet and

Rammer; I mean only to fhow when the bayonet is fixed, the rammer in the fock, and the firelock prefented, how the firelock then operates upon the ftrength of the arm, which is to fupport it, and the effect it has. This article may, at firft view, feem inconfiderable to thofe who are not converfant in mechanics; but however that may be, we all know by experience that the lighter any weapon can well be made at the extremity from us, the more manageable it becomes; and on the contrary, that the heavier it is there, the greater degree of frength it requires to ufe it.

Now in order to fhew how the weight of the firelock in the above pofition operates on the ftrength of the arm which fupports it, I thall endeavour to demonftrate by the property of the lever; and for which purpofe I fhall confider the firelock, at whofe extre-. mity the bayonet is fixed, as a lever, whofe length, exclufive of the bayonet, is five feet two inches; and I fhall confider the left hand that fupports it, when prefented, as the fulcrum of the lever, placed at the diftance of one foot ten inches from the but-end, or three feet fout inches from the muzzle, and I fhall fuppofe the weight of the bayonet to be feventeen ounces.

Then I fay as one foot ten inches the diftance from the left hand to the but-end is to three feet four inches. the diftance from that hand to the muzzle, fo is feventeen ounces the weight of the bayonet at the muzzle to almoft thirty-one ounces, the balancing or counteracting weight at the but; now as the fulcrum of every lever, like the counterpoint part of the beam of a pair of fcales, fuftains as well the whole force of power, as the weight of that which counteracts it, therefore, the left hand being here the fulcrum, will
be burdened with twice thirty one ounces, making together fixty-two ounces : and if to which, be added the force of that part of the bayonet extending beyond the muzzle, then that likewife will be found to produce better than fix ounces more, and then the whole burden refting upon the left hand and arm, which in general is the weakeft, will be about fixtyeight ounces, occafioned only by the fixing of the bayonet.

And again, to account for the iron rammer, whofe weight is better than ten ounces, but as the rammer is lodged in pipes, lying parallel to the barrel, and extending to the end of it; and as the rammer is made tapering, and not truly a cylinder, its power will be beft and eafieft determined experimentally; and as fuch it will occafion a counteracting weight of eleven ounces, which being alfo doubled, is twentytwo ounces more, and that being added to the above fixty-eight ounces, make together ninety ounces, which added again to the weight of the firelock, which is about ten pounds thirteen ounces, exclufive the rammer and fling, will about make in all fixteen pounds feven ounces, the full weight which the left hand is to fupport when the firelock is prefented.

Hence the caufe of that great. languor fó evident, when foldiers come to recover their firelocks from the prefent, and of the violent pain they fuffer in their left arms at the time of prefenting, by being thus overburdened and unable to bear that weight, which muft of courfe affect the fteadinefs requifite in taking a proper aim, and confequently render the fire uncertain or ineffectual.

To remedy as much as pofible fo great a difadvantage as the above, I would propofe to have, in
the Bayonets made much lighter, and of the fame length and fubftance with thofe of the dragoons; and in the next, I would have wooden rammers as formerly, inftead of the prefent heavy iron ones, which would caufe in this laft article alone, exclufive of the bayonet, a difference in preffure at the time of prefenting, of at leaft nineteen ounces; in fhort, the beft recommendation, which I can offer for an alte-ration, is to defire any one to take a firelock in his hand, and make a trial himfelf, and I am perfuaded he will be immedately convinced, how neceffary it is to remove thofe inconveniencies.

## Art. II. Of the Firclock.

What I fhall offer in the firft place concerning the firelock, is relative to its weight; in the adjufting of which, it ought to be an eftablifhed rule, " that the weight of all be proportioned to the general ftrength of all thofe who are to make ufe of them, or rather made lighter ;" confequently, fhould that weight be too great, the arms will then become burdenfome and unweildy, and only ferve to opprefs the man, and overpower his ftrength in the difcharge of his duty. Now, as our arms are confeffedly under this difadvantage, I am therefore for diminifhing fuch articles as may be judged fuperfluous in themfelves, and thofe which I fhall point out, are as follows :

Firf, I would have the barrel made on the outfide, like that of the fufee, with two reinforced rings placed at proper diftances from the breech, which improvement would occafion it to be much lighter by making the barrel fo much the thinner from
from thofe rings towards the muzzle, and yet equally ferviceable, and fill more ufeful, fince it would then feel lighter at the muzzle, and confequently more manageable: Next, I would have all that part of the mounting, which is not much expofed to violence, to be made confiderably lighter than it is; fuch as the rammer-pipes, the guard, and the upper part of the cap of the butt; and likewife all the pins, with whatever elfe will admit of being reduced: And laftly, I would have the fufee lock introduced, inftead of the prefent large heavy one. And befides thefe alterations, there is another improvement which I much wifh for, and that is, to have at the breech a fmall fight-channel made, for the adrantage and convenience of occafionally taking better aim.

The next article which If fhall touch upon is the wretched temper given to fome of the principal parts of the firelock. The vile practice of which is in nothing more notorious than in the two following inftances. I have frequently obferved, that our barrels are in general fo fhamefully foft, that by only the exercife of a few field days, they were fo blown at the touch-bole, as to be totally unfit for fervice. And I have likewife found the faces of bammers fo fuperficially hardened, that in as fhort a fpace of time, the hardening was quite wrorn off, fo as to caufe little or no fire at the fnap of the flint, and this in fo great a great degree, that I have often feen better than half the firelocks of a company, in that terrible condition.

SEct.

## Sect. III. Of Accoutrements.

The Accoutrements of a foldier, confift of a Moulder-belt, to which his pouch is faftened or buckled, and of a waift or fword-belt, carrying his bayonet, the leather of all which is called buff, being the flkin of the buffalo, and therefore ftrong, thick, heavy, and fpongy. The fhoulder and waift belt are each much of the fame breadth, being about three inches and a half broad. The leathers of the pouch, fuch as the buckle-ftraps, flap and pocket, are commonly made of another fort of dreffied leather, but equally thick and heavy as that of the buff. And as to the cartridge box of the pouch, it is made of wood or tin, and fo contrived, as commonly to contain thirty-fix cartridges, the whole weighing about five pounds eight ounces; and if to that, be added three pounds twelve ounces more, the weight of the cartridges made up, with only fingle balls, together with the weight of the bayonet, and alfo of the flints and other convenient articles for keeping the firelock clean and in good order, the whole weight then taken together, will be very little fhort of 'eleven pounds eight ounces, hanging on the man's body.

But the incumbrance of this weight, though great in it itfelf, is not fo intolerable, efpecially on a march or for any length of time, as the enormous breadth of the belts, which compreffes the body to fuch a degree, and excludes fo effectually every cooling breeze from it, that the man in a fhort fpace of time, is fo overheated, as to become quite languid and fatigued, and incapable of every vigorous effort. When
this
this is the cafe, he naturally lays himfelf regardlefsly down to reft, and in that oppreffed condition, feldom efcapes contracting fome diforder or other, fuch as rheums, agues, fevers, dc. which commonly terminate either in the lofs of his life, or the lofs of his fervice for a confiderable time. To remove then, as far as convenience will admit, a caufe productive of fuch bad effects, I would have thofe belts made confiderably narrower, and that at the leaft a third more than what they are at prefent: The advantages of which alteration would be, firft the man would feel himfelf more eafy, cool, and light; next, it would give him a fprightly and active appearance, inftead of being like an unwieldy champion truffed up in a coat of mail; and, laftly, by thus diminifhing the breadth of the belts, the expence in the purchafe of new Accoutrements would confequently be proportionably leffened, and that obtained without fhortening in the leaft, the duration of the wear.

But before I conclude this article, I fhall touch upon another point, relative to the prefervation of our Accoutrements, of which we feem to be totally ignorant; what I mean, is our pernicious method of cleaning them. The rule we follow is this: when the Accoutrements want cleaning, the foldiers fet the feveral articles to foak in water, after which they fcrape them with a fharp knife, wafh them afreth, and colour them with a ftuff prepared for the purpofe. The confequence of which is, that by thus fraping them, they frequently, if not always, cut and mangle them; and not only this, but the fubftance of the leather is fo wafted and impaired, that they foon become quite thin and jagged at the edges; bedfies the coat or nap of the buff being entirely, fhaved
off, which makes the furface appear black and horny, fo that in a fhort fpace of time the accoutrements are neither fit for fervice or appearance, and feldom laft a third of the time they otherways would. To avoid this bad effect, others have fubftituted another method, which is, that inftead of fcraping them, as before defcribed, they caufe the feveral pieces of the leather to be rubbed or daubed over with a kind of putty, made of pipe-maker's clay and fize mixed together, which when dry, fticks fo clofe, as not eafily to be rubbed off; but to this method, there are two objections; the firft is, that when the accoutrements come to be worn in wet weather, the rain fo foftens the coat of colouring upon them, as to make it run off, which fpoils the cloaths, and disfigures their appearance. The other objection is, that as the colour is a pure white, and not refembling the natural colour of the leather, it makes the cloaths and trimmings, after they are about half worn, to appear very fhabby, and to great difadvantage, the colour being then too lively a contraft to the foil upon the lace and cloth.

Now what I would recommend, inftead of either of the above methods, is, firf to fet the accoutrements to foak in water, and then to take out a piece at a time, and lay it flat upon a board, with the right fide uppermoft; this being done, let it be rubbed over with fome hard foap, and upon which fprinkle a little fine fand; then take a hard brufh dipped in water, and with it rub fufficiently the piece to be cleaned; this method will not only take off all dirty and greafy fpots, much quicker than by fcraping the parts with a knife, but it will preferve
the coar of the leather, and prevent the injurious and bad confequences already defcribed.

The feveral parts of the Accoutrements being thus prepared and handled, they are next to be well wafhed and hung up; and after they aie about half dry, let them be dipped in the colouring tub and fet to dry thoroughly; then they are to be well dufted and brufhed, the buckles well cleaned and brightened, and the feveral parts put together, and fixed in their proper places.

The colouring made ufe of on this occafion, is a compofition of whiting and ochre; the proportion of each is commonly adjufted by the fancy of the commanding officer; but the compofition which I think the moft proper, is that which approaches the neareft to the natural colour of the leather, or rather a degree brighter, which will be fuitable to all ftages of wear, which the clothes may have.

## C H A P. II.

## The Duty of the Corporal.

## S ест. I. Inftructions.

I. HAT a convenient place or piece of ground be afligned to the Corporal for the exercife and inftruction of fuch recruits as are committed to his charge, and that he do there proceed with them at appointed times, in the following manner.

Note. The place where recruits are taught their exercife, is called the Dril.
II. That he do firft teach them feparately, or one by one, and afterwards, according to their different degrees of proficience, or the progrefs which each makes, clafs, or put them into diftinct Squads, that thofe who are moft forward, may not be retarded, and have unneceffary trouble given them by the indocility, or aukwardnefs of the backward, and with a view that they may be the fooner difiniffed from him, and placed under the care of the Serjeant.
III. That he be careful to teach them but one diftinct motion at a time, and that he never offer at running from one thing to another, before they are truly perfect in that which was firft taught them; for accuracy and expertnefs in any fcience can only be acquired by gradual inftruction and practice; juft as a drummer is taught to beat, firft by diftinct taps, and then as he becomes more expert, he quickens his beats, till at laft, each tap or beat is lof or unobiferved, in one continued roll on his drum.
IV. That he do always caufe a profound filence to be obferved, it being otherwife impoffible to attend to what is in hand.
V. That he do previoufly prepare their minds for whatever they are to do, and that he do patiently explain the intent of things, in order that the bufinefs they are upon may be the better comprehended, and that his inftructions may have the fuller effect, for all men are but too apt to defpife or neglect the thing which they do not underftand.
VI. That he do never overlook any remiffnefs or inattention, without a proper admonition or rebuke; for now is the feafon to fow the feeds of fubordination.
VII. That no pique or prejudice appear in his cenfures, in order that juftice and duty may-approve his proceedings, and prevent his recruits from early imbibing any malignant fpirit of murmur and difcontent.
VIII. That he do upon all occafions make himfelf an example of order and punctuality to them.
IX. That he admit of no freedom or intimacy between him and any one fubordinate to him.

X . 'That he never do admit the leaft encroachment of thofe fubordinate to him upon his authority.

## Séc T. II. Of Refpect to Superiors.

A due deference to our Superiors may juftly be efteemed and termed the firft principle of difcipline; it being a certainty, that where that is not obferved, no authority can poffibly exift: We are therefore, on every occafion, not only to teftify our attention, fubmiffion,
miffion, and refpect to all thofe whom his Majefty fhall think fit to place above us; but we are, by our example, to induce others to do the fame, and to fee it impreffed by times on the juvenile part of the army.

On this principle then, the corporal is firf of all to proceed with the recruits under his care, by duly inftructing them in an humble, decent, and proper mode of behaviour to their fuperiors; and, in order to ground them the better in fo becoming a demeanour, he is each morning to make thera practice his rules, and to fee that they do obferve then, and according to the following directions.

## Art. I. Of Defortment.

The Corporal is firf to direct and inform his recruits that whenever they are fooke to, either by himfelf or by any other their fuperior, they never offer or prefume on the occafion, to fit, lean, or appear in any carelefs or indifferent pofture, but at once to raife themfelves up, and to ftand erect, and with a gradual motion of the, right hand to take off their hats, letting the hat with both hands fall and hang eafily down by their fides. That their countenance be open, calm, and attentive; and that they give mild and fubmiffive anfwers to all queftions as may be alked them.

After which inftruction, he is to take occafion to fpeak to them himfelf, and to afk them queftions, in order to obferve their behaviour, and to perfect them in it.

## Art. II. Of the Standing Salute.

Before I proceed to lay down rules for the Salute, I beg leave to explain what I comprehend of it, in order that I may be the better underfood. A Salute then conveys to me an idea of gentlenefs and calmnefs, in oppofition to whatever is hafty, ftiff, and pert; than which nothing can be, in my opinion, more difguffful and forbidding; and therefore, I take it, that whatever part of the falute is performed with a fnatch or a bounce, as is by fome thought military, is repugnant to my idea of a falute; and according to this my notion, I fhall frame my inftructions.

The fanding or front falute, then, is given either upon addreffing or receiving a fuperior. In the performance of which the recruit is, at about the diftance of fix paces from the perfon to be faluted, to raife his right hand with a gentle motion to his hat, and in fuch a manner that he may eafily take hold of the front cock, without the leaft inclination of his head, and without drawing up his fhoulders at the fame time. The hat is to be held between the thumb and fingers, and lifted perpendicularly off the head, moving it then fo far horizontally to the right that no part of the bole may be over the head; when he is to let it and the hand fall gradually down by his fide, turning the bole inwards to his thigh, and letting it there remain during the time of the addrefs; after which let him place itagain upon his head with the like gradual motion, as when it was firft taken off. In raifing the arm to take off or put on the hat, let the elbow be fquare, and the lower part of the arm kept level, which will give a graceful angle at the wrift,
when the hand has hold of the hat. During the time of addrefs his countenance is to be preferved open and ferene, with a fteady and manly a afpect, taking care that his eyes be not then fo clownifhly contracted, as if he were looking at an object that dazzled him ; nor his looks fo confufed, as if there were a conflict in them between bafhfulnefs and affurance; and, laftly, that his body be kept erect, and void of all feeming ftiffnefs.

## Art. III. Of the pafing Salute.

The paffing or fide falute is given on paffing by a fuperior, and is performed thus: The hat is to be taken off and let fall down by the fide, in the fame manner as was fhewn in the laft article, but with this difference, that it be now taken off with the hand the mof diftant from the perfon to be faluted; turning the head at the fame time, and looking at him with a cool and refpectful countenance; but never with a fimile, as that carries with it too great an air of freedom, which muft never be taken or admitted with a fuperior.

## Sect. III. To Stand.

The recruits being make perfect in the foregoing points, they are next to be drawn up in a fingle rank, and fized ; that is, the talleft are to be on the right, and the florteft on the left, decreafing gradually in height from right to left. The fpace which each man is to occupy, is to be one pace, or two feet and an half; that is, the diftance from the centre of one man's body, to that of the next to him, is to meafure
fo much. This point being fettled, which will be better explained farther on, the Corporal is then to pro* ceed according to the following directions.

## Art.. I. of fanding ercit.

The keeping of the body erect is acquired by a knowledge of particular principles, contributing to the appearance, eafe, and ftrength of the man; and for which purpofes the following rules are to be obferved.

The body of the man is to be kept firm and upright, but not in a fiff or conftrained pofture. His face is to be truly erect, fo as neither to recline backward, or to incline forward; there being in either pofition an equal awkwardnefs, and that which will affect the due ballance of the body. His view, or rifual direction, is to be horizontal, except then he fhall have occafion to look fideways, or at an object below him; and even then without altering the.erection of his face. His fhoulders are to fall eafy from his néck; and to be preffed or thrown a little back, in order to bring his breaft or cheft the more forward. Each arm is to hang eafy down by his fide, with the palm of each hand turned inwards, and placed on the outfide half-front of his thigh. And his knees are to be kept ftiff and firm under him, in order to fupport the better the weight of his body, and to prevent any inclination of it. -

Note, This attitude is called ftanding in proper or'ler; either when a Soldier is with or without his arms, the finall difference between either be:ng the pofition of the ha:ds.

## Art. II. Of planting the Feet.

The planting of the feet confifts in placing them at a proper diftance from each other, and in fuch a manner as can beft fuftain the weight of the body and keep it erect. To effect which this maxim is to be obferved : That " every object fands the weaker by bow " much its bafe is lefs than its greateft diameter." Now, the bafe of a man is his feet, and his greateft diameter the breadth of his fhoulders; therefore fhould his feet be placed fo near to each other, as to occupy a lefs fpace than the breadth of his fhoulders, he muft confequently ftand fo much the weaker, or not fo firm as if they had been placed at a more convenient diftance.

Now, in order to afcertain that point of diftance, I fhall fhow on what principle I limit the face of ground upon which a man is to ftand; and for which purpofe let it be firft obferved, that the weight of a man's body, when he ftands, refts upon an arch which is called his fork; and that the piers of that arch, if I'may fo call them, are his thighs and legs. 'Now, as " no independent object can fuftain itfelf out of the line " of gravity," it therefore follows, that every independent object is beft fupported by a perpendicular bearing; therefore as a man's thighs and legs are the piers, or columns, which fupport the arch that fuftains the weight of his body, confequently thofe columus ought to ftand perpendicular, and be parallel to each other. Hence it is, that when a man happens to ftand out' of this direction, by having his feet placed either too near or too far afunder, he will quickly find himfelf to ftand uneafy and infirm; be-
caufe the weight of his body has not then a perpendicular bearing, which frains the parts when out of that direction; therefore, as a perpendicular bearing is of courfe the firmeft pofture, let the diftance then be meafured from the centre of one thigh bone to that of the other, juft below the fork of a middle fized man, which will be found to be about ten inches; and let that diftance be laid from the centre of one ankle to that of the other, holding the feet parallel to each other at the fame time, and then the heels' will be found to be placed by that means, at the diftance of about feven inches afunder; and on the toes being again properly turned out, as will be fhown farther on, the diftance then, from out to out of the toes, will likewife be found to be nearly equal to the breadth of his fhoulders, or the greateft diameter of his body. And hence I deduce this general rule, viz. That the heels be placed, when a man ftands erect, at the diftance of Seven inches afunder:

## S ес т. IV. To Face.

To Face, means no more but to turn the body from its original pofition, either to the right or to the left, as occafion may require. But in order to have a clear idea of this operation, and to comprehend the better how it is to be performed, I fhall fuppofe a man, fanding in proper order, to be placed continually within a circle; and the centre of that circle to be the heel or point upon which he faces, turns, or revolves. Again, I fhall fuppofe this circle, or whole revolution, to be divided into four equal parts; each part making a quadrant, or a fourth part E 2
of
of a circle; and that two of thofe quadrants make a femicircle, or the half of the whole circle.

Now when a man is ordered to face, or to turn to the right or to the left, this word of command means no more, but that he fhould perform only the revolution of a quadrant from the place where he laft ftood; but when he is ordered to face to the right, or to the left about, the addition of the word about, fignifies, that he is then to perform the revolution of a femicircle, as will be exemplified, in the following words of command.

## I. Face to the right. One Niotion.

## Dircction.

At which he is, with a fpring, to fall back brifkly with his right foot, making his left heel the centre point upon which his body is to turn, and to come fo far to the right as to defcribe a quadrant, or to make a full face to the place where his right hand had been, before he faced. In this operation, he is to preferve entire the true attitude of his body. His arms are to have no fwing with them ; his body is to be kept upright; his heels at their proper diftance; his toes to be well turned out; and the whole is to be formed with fuch immediate exactnefs and dexterity, as to have no feeming amendnuent on coming to his new fation.

## II. Face to the right. One Motion,

## Direction.

This operation is performed in the fame manner, and with the fame addrefs and attention as the laft;
which
which both together will conftitute the revolution of a femicircle, and will then caufe a full face to the rear, his back being now to the front.
III. Face to the right about: One Motion.

## Direction.

This operation is to be performed in the fame way as the other two, but with this difference, that as the turn of the body is now to defcribe a femicircle, the greater fpring and agility is of courfe required to effect it.

## IV. Face to the left. One Motion.

## Direction.

Note', In all facings to the left, their operations are juft performed in the fame manner as thofe to the right, with difference only of fituation, ftill making the left heel the centre of motion; and therefore this word of command requires no more action but to make a full face to the left, fo as to defcribe a quadrant with the turn of the body, bringing up the right foot at the fame time.

## V. Face to the left. One Motion.

## Direction.

Make alfo another revolution of a quadrant, which will occafion a full face to the rear.

IV. Face

## VI. Face to the left about. One Motion.

## Direction.

Now perform the revolution of a femicircle, which will caufe a full face to the front.

Why I make the left heel in all the above facings, and in all facings whatever, the centre of motion, preferable to the right, is for this reafon; that, as the generality of men are right-handed, greater ftrength and agility lie of courfe in the right fide than in the left: And all the above facings require agility, and confequently ftrength to perform them, therefore the neceffity for having the force of motion to come from the ftrongeft fide, in order to bring the body the better about; , but were the right heel to be made the centre of motion inftead of the left, the right fide would by that means be then confined, and confequently the force of motion would be the more feeble, it coming from the left, which is the weaker fide of the two; for in all the above revolutions, the fronger the motion or fpring, the firmer the body will turn. There is indeed another reafon, and, in my opinion, a weighty one, for making the left heel, on all Facings, the centre of motion; it ferves to prevent the miftakes, that always happen, when different heels are ufed for the fame purpofe. And why I make each facing to be performed at one fingle motion on one heel, inftead of three motions on two heels, is for this obvious reafon; that it faves. fo much the more time, and withal the operation being in itfelf to the full as well performed, as there are now no fwords worn, which frequently caufed an interruption, and made it neceffary
ceffary to perform a fingle Facing at three motions inftead of one.

## Sect. V. To March.

Marching confifts in teaching a Soldier, firft, how to balance his body in the carriage of his perfon; next, how to ground well his foot; and, laftly, how to limit his ftep. It likewife teaches him an equality of pace, or a famenefs of motion with others in the fame rank with himfelf; and to time and meafure his pace with thofe who either lead or go before him, in order to preferve a proper diftance and a ftraight rank.

Thefe are the feveral requifites which conftitute good marching; and to acquire which, is, I may venture to fay, one of the moft difficult parts of the exercife, the beft precepts availing but little without conftant practice. But as fkill and expertnefs in every fcience muft firft be obtained by inftruction, I fhall therefore give the following directions.

## Art. I. To Balance the Body.

The Balance of the Body depends intirely upon a proper pofition of the knee and foot. With refpect to the firft, let it be obferved, that as in ftanding both feet fupport the body at once, fo in marching only one foot can at a time perform that office, each foot being alternately upon the ground. Now as the keeping of the knee ftiff and firm, in order to ftrengthen the limb for the better fupport of the body, was fhewn to be neceffary in the firft inftance, it follows, that it muft be to the full, if not more fo, in the prefent, as each knee is now burdened with double the weight that it fuftained when fanding. Therefore the rule which I fhall offer for this purpofe, is,

That the knee of each foot as it fteps;' as well as that of each foot which is grounded, be kept. Aiff and firm.

The neceflity for the knee to be kept thus ftiff is evident from obfervation; that when a man walks with bended. knees he always walks feeble and uneven, and, confequently, ungraceful and hobling, and more liable to be thrown down at every ftumble or joftle.

Thus much then concerning the knee, and now with refpect to the proper pofition of the foot. To fettle this point, the firft thing to be confidered is the office of the foot when grounded; which, upon a little reflection, will be found to confift in affording an outfide, as well as a front aid to the body, by keeping it erect, and by preventing it from falling fideways or forward. Hence then that pofition of the foot, which equally participates of both aids, is un2 doubtedly the moft proper, as any defect in either muft evidently affect a due Balance of the Body. To find out then that point at which to place the foot, let it be obferved, that the angle contained in the fweep made by the toe from fide to front, making the heel the centre, is equal to ninety degrees, and the half of that angle is forty-five, or the half of a quadrant. Now let the toe be turned out to that middle point, and then the foot will have its true pofition for fupporting the body, either in flanding or marching. It will be further neceffary to make the recruit practice for fome time to ftand alternately upon each foot, which will give him a better command of his Balance, and will caufe him to walk more even and fteady.
ART. II. To Ground the Foot.

In regard to the Grounding of the Foot, which is another material point, care mult be taken that it al-
ways moves parallel to the furface of the ground over which it fteps, which will occafion it to ground all at once, and be the means of making the body to move firm and even in walking, otherwife fhould either the heel or the toe be firft grounded, it will caufe an hobling and infirm movement, becaufe the Foot, by being fo grounded, acquires two motions inftead of one, and, confequently, fuch motions can neither be fo ftrong and fmooth, as if only one was made by the foot being at once placed upon the ground.

## Art. III. To Limit the Step.

As to the length, or meafure of each ftep, no rule can well be laid down for it, becaufe men of different fizes neceffarily and commonly ftep different lengths, and becaufe the flower a man walks the fhorter will be his ftep, and the quicker the longer ; therefore the length of the ftep muft be adjufted to the occafion, and to the make and fize of the man; but however, this may be recommended, that it be not fo fhort as to make him appear fribblifh, nor fo long as to appear clownifh; fince, in the firft inftance it will caufe an ugly wriggling effeminate motion, and, in the latter, an aukward projection of the body.

Note, A common pace is two feet and a half; though a fized man feldom gains that diftance at each ftep in moderate walking.

## Art. IV. To preferve Equiality of Pace.

Equality of Pace confifts not only in preferving an even motion and rate of marching with all thofe in the fame rank, but in keeping at a proper diftance
from all thofe who lead or go before; and in order to arrive at a proper degree of perfection in thefe points, the four following propofitions with their explanations are ftrictly to be attended to. .

## PROP.I.

If all the men in the fame rank do not fep rogether with a like foot, they will continually jofle and incommode each other.

## Explanation.

To demonftrate the neceffity for all the men in the fame rank to ftep together with a like foot, that is, with the right or with the left at the fame time, it will be proper firft to thew the natural affection and bearing of the body in walking.

It may be obferved, that as each foot is alternately upon the ground, the body will always incline to that fide on which the foot is grounded, in order to have a perpendicular bearing on that foot for its fupport. Hence the motion of the body from fide to fide as a man walks, and hence the neceffity that when two or more men fand clofe to each other in the fame rank, and are to march or walk at an equal rate or pace, they do ftep with a like foot, in order that their bodies may all at once incline to the right or to the left, or move parallel with each other; and that each man may, by that means, have the more room for his bearing and marching uninterrupted; but were they to ftep with different feet, the cafe would be otherwife; they would then, by the oppofite inclination of their bodies, and by the want of fufficient room to maintain a proper bearing, be continually joftling and incommoding each other.

Befides

Befides the advantage refulting from this method of marching with a like foot, there are two others no lefs momentary, which confift not only in the beauty and gracefulnefs of a rank, or divifion of men obferving that movement, but in accuftoming them betimes to a unity of action; a principle which ought ever to be maintained and inculcated, and never departed from.

Note, All marches, whather to the front or to the rear, are to be begun with the left foot. Whence the reafon I know not; though moft men, efpecially the right-handed, were they not informed of the contrary, would firft ftep off with the right foot; but as it is a matter very immaterial in itfelf, whether a man begins his march with his right or his left foot, provided all the men in the fame rank ftep together with a like foot; and as it has been a long eftablifhed rule to begin always the march with the left foot, an alteration is of little confequence, and therefore I fhall leave the point as I find it: but all marches by files, whether to the right or to the left, are to be begun with the foot next the front, becaufe it is the moft confpicuous, and neareft to view.

## - P R O P. II.

If one man's ftep is longer or Sborter than, another's, in the fame rank with bimfelf, it will occafion him to be cither too far advanced, or too mucb retired, and confequently will make the rank to appear uneven in that part.

> Explanation.

As among a number of men fome will naturally ftep
longer or fhorter than others, this inequality can no otherwife be remedied, or made lefs difcernible, than by a frit attention of the men rhemfelves to each othen, and that of thole who are to fuperintend them: but in order that each man may the fooner difcover. whether his fteps differ, from others, or others from himfelf, the application of the following maxim will immediately inform him.

If an object is fo placed as to be in a line with two. others, the whole will then be in one and the fame direaction.

Now, if a man is placed in a direction or line with. two or more men, whether they be on his right or on his left, and all do stand alike erect, it is evident that the man next him will obstruct his view of him who is more remote; and this being reciprocally the cafe with reflect to others, the rule then will be,

That as Jon as ever a man ball difcover by bis own movement but just the beginning appearance of the fecondo or third man from bim, whether in rank or in file, be do inftantly regulate his motions, fo as to deprive. himself of that vieuv.

The application of the above maxims is extremely ufeful and requifite in the adjusting of all arrangements and directions of whatever extent, whether of files, tracing out an encampment, or forming a line of battle, \&cc. for if two objects are erected or given, 2 third can eafily be placed in a line with them.

## PR O P. III.

If all the men in the Same rank do not march in a parallel direction with each other, they will occafion the rank, when it comes to halt, to be either to open.or-too much closed.

Expla-

Explanation.
This propofition is made evident by this maxim; "That if right lines are not parallel, they will either converge or diverge." But to prevent the irregularity here pointed at, requires the greateft nicety and judgment; becaufe a man muft keep, not only in a parallel direction with thofe on his right and on his left, but he muft keep the line, or direction of his march perpendicular to the line of his rank, that he may the better preferve, in this laft inftance, the ground of his divifion or battalion, and prevent its inclining too much to the right, or too much to the left. Now a fingle man may, with tolerable exactneis, effect this by fixing his eye upon two objects in his front, which are in a line with himfelf, and perpendicular or nearly fo to his rank; and then to keep them, as he marches towards them, conftantly fhut, or feemingly united, fo as to prevent their opening to his view. But for a number of men, in the fame rank, to do this is next to an impoffibilty; becaufe of the vaft improbability that the different objects;, which each man pitches upon for his own, direction, are parellel with thofe of other men, or are perpendicular to the line of his rank; and fhould thofe different directions:be not parallel to each other, they muft of courfe either converge or diverge.

Hence the caufe of the frequent openings and clofings of a divifion or battalion, when it marches: from its ground. But as this irregularity will be lefs confpicuous by the error of one man, than that of, many, I would therefore rather have a rank, divifion, or battalion, to be conducted by one careful man only,
only, than permit each man to be his own guide; and for which purpofe, I would have fuch man or guide, to be placed at the centre of the front rank; in order, that all thofe on his right and left, by his boing not more remote from them, may the eafier drefs and move with him; and then all, but the guide himfelf, will have nothing more to attend to, but to preferve a ftrait rank, and to keep at a due diftance from each other.

## PR O P. IV.

If the feveral fucceeding divifions are too near, or. $t o 0$ far afunder, this irregularity will callfe the battalion, when it is formed, to appear in thofe parts, too, open, or too much clofed.

## Explanation.

To prevent the feveral divifions from being too near, or too far afunder, will chiefly depend upon the judgment of the flank men of each divifion, in determining by obfervation the diftance which their. refpective divifions fhould be at from the leading divifion to them : To effect which, I fhall give the following rule:

That the difance from the front rank of the leading divifion, to that of the next fucceeding divifion, be equal to the extent of the front rank of that fucceeding divifion.

Why I give the preference to the flank men in determining the diftance of the divifions from each other. is, becaufe they can better judge of the extent of their. refpective
refpective rank, than thofe who are at or near the centre of it.
' It may now be afked, firft, Whether a body of men can all ftep together, with like feet, upon fervice, or in time of action? And next, if they cannot, wherefore then the neceffity for that infinite pain and trouble, in making them practice fo difficult a point?

To the firft queftion $I$ anfwer, that they cannot well obferve it, on account of the great variety of ground they always muft meet with, which frequently obftructs and obliges them to change their fteps; and above all, on account of the various incidents and circumftances of time and place, which muft divert their attention to more active and ferious matters; and therefore, the points only fought after, on this occafion, are, the prefervation of ftrait ranks, and due diftances in them.

And to the next queftion, I likewife anfwer, that the advantages refulting from the practice of the foregoing rules, more than repays the pain and trouble of obliging men to ftep together, as it not only accuftoms them to a unity of aftion, but it gives to the man himfelf, whether alone, or in a rank with others, not only a graceful and manly appearance, from which he can never after thoroughly depart, but it gives a reputation to the fervice, by fhewing the degree of attention given to the difcipline of it.

## Art. V. Of marching by Files.

The word File, is an unlimited term, comprehending any number of men drawn up in a direct line behind
behind each other; as a rank, on the other hand. includes any number drawn up befide each other; whether, in either refpect, they be at clofe or at open order. And he, who is placed in the front of any File, is called the File-leader, or the man who is to cover all thofe directly in the rear of him, and by whom they are to be guided in their movements.

Having thus defined the point on which I am to proceed, and as I fhall take occafion farther on to make fome obfervations on this article, and on the application of it, I fhall here only touch upon the manner of its operation, and the neceffary fteps preparatory to it.

Let the rank then of recruits be told off or divided, for the firft time, into three parts or divifions. The firft, or right-hand divifion, is to form the front rank; the fecond, or centre divifion, is to make the rear rank; and the third, or left-hand divifion, is to be the centre rank.

Each rank is to be drawn up at four paces, or ten feet diftance from the other ; that is, the centre rank is to be four paces diftant from the front rank; and the rear rank, to be the fame diftance from the centre; and this I call whole diftance.

Each front rank man now becomes the File-leader to thofe men of the other two ranks, directly in his rear, whom he is to cover; and in fuch a manner, that the line of the File may ftand at right angles with the line of the rank, or fo, that if an indifferent perfon was placed in the front in the fame File line of direction continued, he could not poffibly fee the men of the rear ranks, his view being interrupted by him of the front rank. To effect, which, the Corporal is to begin on the right, making the right-hand man of
each rank to compofe the firft or right File, or fo as to make thofe men of the centre and rear ranks to ftand directly behind him of the front rank: then the fecond man of each rank is likewife to make the fecond File; and fo on from right to left till all the Files are compleated.

But as it often happens, that out of the number of men prefent three equal ranks or divifions cannot be truly formed, but , that there will remain, after fuch divifion is made, one or two odd men; then fuch odd men are to be diftributed in the following manner : If only one man, the front rank in preference is to have him; but fhould there be two odd men, then the front rank is to have one, and the rear rank the.other. The intent of which is, that no opening may appear in thofe places; efpecially in the front rank, as that is ever, and on all occafions, to be kept intire and compact.

The Files being thus completed, and the odd men fo difpofed of, the Corporal is then to proceed and give the following words of command.

## I. By Files, Face to the Right. One Motion.

## Direction.

See Chap. II. Sect. IV. Word of Command I.
Note; Now it is to be obferved, that before the men had faced, that which was then a Rank is now become an intire File; as each man ftands behind, or is in the rear of him who leads or is before him. And on the other hand, that that which was at firft a File is now a Rank, as fuch men now ftand befide
each other, and according to the depth they had been originally drawn up at; and in this light, the whole. is now to confider themfelves.

## II. March.

## Direction.

The whole is to ftep off together, and to begin the March with the foot next the front. In marching, each man is carefully to maintain his limited diftance from thofe who go before and are befide him; and in order that he may the better preferve a ftraight line both in his rank and file, he is never to let himfelf.fee she fecond or third man from him.

## III. Halt.

## Direction.

The whole is to fand faft, placing their feet fquare and in proper order.

## IV. Front.

Direction.
The whole is to face to the Front upon the left heel, bringing up the right foot to proper order.
V. By Files Face to the Left. One Motion.

Direction.
See Chap. II. Sect. IV. Word of Command IV.

## VI, March.

## Direction.

See the fecond Word of Command of this article.

> VII, Halt.

## Direction.

See the third Word of Command of this article.

## VIII. Front. One Motion.

## Direction.

The whole is to face to the Front upon the left heel, falling back with the right. foot to proper order.

## Art. VI. Of Oblique Marching.

When a place or fation to which your divifion is to march ftands not directly before you, but obliquely from you, in front, either towards your right or towards your left; then, inftead of approaching it by the tedious and fquare method of right-angled marching, and the wheelings fuitable to that form, you are, by a fhorter way and in a more expeditious manner, to advance to it in the oblique direction it happens to bear from you; and this is called oblique marching. To accomplifh which, there are two ways to perform it; and either is chofen, as the place happens to be nearer or farther from you; and for inftance;

G 2

Suppofe you are to draw up in Line, on the right of a divifion or body of men juft directly before you. To effect which, inftead of ftepping directly forward with the right foot, the man is to ftep obliquely forward to the right; and on his ftepping next with his left foot, he is to ground it directly before his right heel ; and fo on alternately, till the diftance required is obtained. And on the other hand, fhould the divifion be directed to march obliquely to the left; then the left foot is likewife to ftep forward to the left, placing at the next ftep the right foot directly before the left heel, and fo on in reciprocal fucceffion. As to the degree of obliquity of each flep, there can be no fixed rule laid down for it, fince that muft be determined a cording as the place you are to move to ${ }^{\circ}$ ftands more or lefs obliquely from you; but a little practice will foon bring men to regulate their. fteps fuitable to the occafion.
. But when the place to which you are to go happens to be at fome confiderable diftance from you, then you are to make at firft fo much of a rubeel as will bring the front of your divifion to ftand at right angles with the direction of the object to which you are to advance; and afterwards nothing more will remain, but for the divifion to make again juft fo much of another fhort wheel the contrary way when it arrives at the place of its deftination, which will bring it parallel to the line it is to join or fall into.

## S e.c т. VI. To Wheel.

Wheeling is a fpegies of Facing; the latter refpecting individuals; the former a body of men drawn up, either in a fingle rank, or in a divifion compofed of.fe:
veral ranks; each having for its revolution the fame divifions of the circle as the other, and confequently the fame number of words of command; but inftead of faying, as in the Facings, face to the right, \&e. you are to fay in the Wheelings, Divifion, wheel to the right, \&c. See Sect. IV: of this Chapter.

## Art. I. To Wheel by fingle Rank.

In Wheeling by fingle rank, the whole rank revolves on the flank point it wheels on, like the fweep of a pair. of compaffes with one leg fixed, or like a door or a gate turning upon its hinge ; that is, if the rank wheels to the right, it revolves on the right heel of the man who is on the right of the fame rank, and likewife the contrary. Hence it is evident, that the nearer any man is to the heel on which the rank wheels, the lefs will be the fpace which he defcribes in his revolution; and of courfe his feps muft accordingly be longer or fhorter, as that fpace is nearer or farther from the heel orpoint on which he wheels; in order that he may by that means make the requifite revolution at the fame juncture with all thofe in the fame rank with him. This being underfood, no other intimation will then be neceffary, but to preferve a fraight rank, and to oblige the men to ftep together, and to keep at a due diftanse, fo as only juft to touch or feel each other with their right hands, which will be fufficient to prevent their flying out or clofing. too near to each other.

This rule differs a little from the prefent practice, by which the men are directed to incline to the flank they wheel on, or to keep clofe fhoulder to fhoulder, in order to bring each other the better about. But this
this method I difapprove, having obferved, that it not only always occafions a crowded rank, by making the men to clofe too much, but it befides caufes the intervals between the divifions to be too open when the line comes to be formed.

## Art. II. To wheel by ranks in Divifion.

As the men have been in the laft article formed into a fingle rank, they, are now to be formed into a body confifting of three ranks; and in order to which, the fingle rank, in which they are at prefent, is to be told off in three divifions, as is directed in Sect. V. Art. V. of this chapter. But that this operation may be performed in a more methodical or military way; the centre and left divifions, are firft to countermarch, or to change ground with each other; and then the whole is to be formed into three fanks, according to the following words of com. mand.

## I. Left and centre Divifions, face to the Right and Left.

## Direction.

The centre divifion is to face to the left upon the left heel, bringing up the right foot; and the left divifion is to face to the right upon the fame heel, fal, ling back with the right foat.
II. March.

## II. March.

## Dircetion.

Each divifion is to ftep off with the foot next to the front, and to march ftrait forward; the centre divifion marching in the front of that on the left.

## III. Hált.

## Direction.

This word of command is to be given on the divifions having arrived at each others former ground; and in order that each man may then place himfelf at his due diftance from him who leads or goes before.
IV. Front.

## Direction.

The new centre divifion, as it now fands, is to face to the Left on the left heel, bringing up the right* foot; and the new left divifion is to face to the right on the left heel, falling back with the right foot; and then the whole is to drefs as a rank-intire.
V. To the right wheel, and form jour Ranks. March.

Direction.
Each of the three divifions is as they now ftand, in fingle rank, to wheel a quadrant, which will bring them
them parallel to each other; beyond which-ground, the men are not to advance, though they are to continue the ftep motion with their feet, till they are ordered to halt.

## VI. Halt.

## Direction.

The whole three ranks, vizt the Front, Centre, and Rear, are to ftand faft; planting their feet at * proper diftances, and in a line with each other.

## VII. Rear ranks, take whole diftance. March.

## Direction.

The diftance that the ranks are to be from each other, being previoufly marked out; as is directed in Sect. V. Art. V. of this chapter; the men of the rear ranks are to march to that ground, or rather to be formed upon it. Then the files are to be completed, and the ranks dreffed, directing each man to obferve and remember well his file leader, and his right and left hand men; that in cafe they fhould afterwards be broke or difperfed, they might the more readily form of themfelves, by each man knowing his fation, and-falling at once into his proper place.
VIII. Rear ranks close to half diftance. March.

## Direction.

The centre rank is to march two paces, and the rear rank four; each rank ftepping off at the fame time with the left feet.

## IX. Rear ranks close to quarter diftance. March.

## Direction.

The centre rank is to march one pace, and the rear rank two; which is called close order.

The men being thus formed into close order, and made to whee!, the whole body may then be compared to a fold parallelogram, or to a book, revolving upon, one of its front angles, which by its folidity, brings round with it all its fides and angles, according to the figure it is in. Now, as the wheeling of a division or a body of men, confifting of two or more ranks, differs in nothing from the wheeling of a fingle rank, but in the bringing round of its rear ranks with it; and as the rear ranks cannot. revolve on a point, as the front rank does, consequently tire men of thole ranks muff orcafinally incline to the right or to the left, in order to preferve their figure, and to maintain the true direction of their reflective files; that is, if the divifion wheel to the right, the men of the rear ranks incline to the left; and if it fhould wheel to the left, they likewife incline to the right, in order to come about, in either inftance, with the men of the front rank; and according to their figure, in a clofe and compact form and order: but as a divifion has often occafion to wheel as well upon one of its rear angles as its front, the corporal is for that purpofe, and after he has made his men perfect in wheeling upon each of the front angles, to order the divifion to the right about, and then perfect it likewife in wheeling upon each of the rear angles, or he may perfect the whole as well or
rather better, by making each rear rank alternately, a front rank.

> Art. iil. To wheel in time.

When a battalion is marching by divifions in column, and there fhould be occafion to form the line at once, nothing is then more unfightly, or proclaims more the want of proper inftruction, than to fee the feveral divifions wheel fo irregular, as not to fhut in, or come up all at once to their ground.

To avoid fo unbecoming an appearance, no other rule is requifite, but a ftrict attention in each fuccceding divifion to its leading divifion, fo as to keep at a due diftance from it, and to time well its wheel with it.

CHAP.

## C H A P. III.

## The Duty of the Serjeant.

## S е с т. I. Infructions.

I. C HE fame caution which I have given the Corporal, I fhall here again repeat to the Serjeant, viz. That be make perfect as be proceeds; and in order to which he muft not only dweil long on the fame thing, but make it his conftant bufinefs to recur frequently to it.
II. Upon having the recruits delivered over to him from the corporal, fhould he, on examination, find any of them imperfect in thofe points of the exercife which the corporal had charge to inftruct them in, he is then not only to remand fuch recruit to the corporal for the better information, but he is to make a report of that defeet to his commanding officer; and this he is to do in his own defence, for thould he connive at fuch a proceeding, the difcovery of the fault, and the cenfure arifing from it, will not then be levied at the corporal, but at himfelf, it being his duty to fuperintend and report fuch matters.
III. He is to have a corporal under him as an affiftant, who is, according to the different words of command, to perform the feveral motions of the exercife for the better direction and imitation of the recruits.
IV. He is to divide the time of exercife into fuch portions as will not over-fatigue the recruits by their being kept too long under arms.
V. He is to be very frict in having himfelf punctually obeyed, and upon all occafions to appear fo jealous of his own confequence, as not to fuffer the leaft
freedom to be taken with him by thofe under his command.
VI. He is to draw up his recruits in a fingle rank, placing them according to their different heights in fucceffion from right to left : viz. the talleft on the right, the fhorteft on the left. See Chap. II. Sect. III. And when they come afterwards to be drawn up. three deep, the fame rule for fizing the men in the different ranks is likewife to be obferved, viz. the talleft men in the front rank; the next talleft in the rear rank; and the fhorteft in the centre. See Chap. II. Sect. IV. Art. II.

There are three effential reafons for thus fizing the men in the different ranks. The firft is, for appearance fake, as it makes the men of each rank to feem all of an equal height. The next is, that by placing. the talleft men in the front rank, thofe in the rear, being of a lefs height, may the better be covered from the fire of the enemy. And the laft is, that by having thofe of the next greater fize in the rear rank, they may there, with more convenience and lefs obftruction, deliver their fire over thofe of a lefs height in the centre rank, as thefe laft do over the front rank when it kneels.

This method of fizing the men in the different ranks is certainly the beft for the good appearance of a fingle company, when not joined or connected with other companies; but it evidently makes a battalion appear to great difadvantage, for as the fhorteft man of each rank is by this means placed on the left of the faine, and there joined to the talleft in that of the next company'to him, the difference of height then between thofe two men is frequently fo great, as to make a very vifible and difagrecable appearance. To
prevent which, I would recommend to have the talleft man of each rank in every company placed on the right of its centre; the next talleft to him on his left; and the next in turn on his right; and fo on alternately from right to left, till the rank be compleated : by which means, no ftriking difference of height will then appear between the right-hand man of one company, and the left-hand man in the fame rank of the adjoining company to him; and confequently as the different heights of the men are thus concealed, each rank of the battalion will then appear as if all the men were of an equal height.
VII. In drawing up the Recruits, he is to give or allow to each man the fpace or room of two feet and an half, or one pace; that is, that the diftance from the centre of one man's body to that of the next to him may meafure fo much.

Why I make choice of this diftance, preferable to any other, is for the following reafons; firft, becaufe the generality of men do meafure about two feet from outfide to outfide of both arms, when the hands hang eafy down by the body; and next to make an allowance for the projection of the pouch, and for the fweep or circle which the body will defcribe, when it has occafion to turn to the right or to the left, which will require at leaft fix inches more room, otherwife the men will, for want of it, eternally jufle and incommode each other in their revolutions.
VIII. In drawing up the Recruits, be is, if he can contrive it, to place them in fuch a fituation, that the fun or wind may be upon either flank; by which means, they, as well as himfelf, will be the better enabled to obferve each other.
IX. He is every morning, previous to the time of exercife, to examine well the fate and condition of the arms and accoutrements of each Recruit ; to the intent, that whatever is out of order may be immediately repaired and adjufted, and that nothing may impede the exercife, or obftruct the bufinefs of the day'; and this examination is the more requifite, as it accuftoms young Soldiers betimes to a proper care and attention of thofe articles.
X. He is likewife to fee that each Riecruit be properly and well dreffed, that the feveral fpecies of his cloathing be clean and well put on, and that nothing , is wanting and out of repair.
XI. He is to fee that the Accoutrements be properly put on and worn; that is, that each pouch do hang on the right fide of the body, and placed fo convenient, that whatever is wanted out of it may be eafily come at, otherwife fhould the pouch hang too high, too low, or too far behind, it will occafion an awkward twifting or motion of the body to come at the contents : and he is withal to take particular care that all the pouches of the fame rank do hang at equal heights, and in like places, which will give a pleafing appearance of uniformity to the whole Rank.
XII. He is aifo to obferve that the Bayonet-belt be well wore ; that is, that it be buckled round the waift, and above the hips, and, in particular, that the Bayonet does hang' well and convenient, and nearly perpendicular, fo that the handle may be placed between the left hip and centre of the body; and in fuch a manner that the point of it may juft appear without the left thigh, by which means the Recruit will neither be obftructed by the handle when he ftoops or leans forward, nor will he be interrupted by
the fticking out of the point when he comes occafionally to turn himfelf.
XIII. He is next to make the Recruits to ftand in proper order, as is thewn in Chap. II. Sect, III. Art. I.
XIV. He is then to fhow them how to Joulder their Firelocks, or to carry well their arms, and in order to which, the Firelock is to be placed upon the left floulder, and held at the extremity of the but ir the palm of the left hand ; fo that the hand may be under the but, and the tops of the fingers appear on the infide, while the thumb remains on the outfide, extended in a line with the edge of the but-plate: the upper part of the guard is to come fo low as to be placed a little under the left breaft : the firelock is to reft upon that part of the hollow of the fhoulder, between the tip and the upper part of the breaft, where it is to be held very firm againft the body, and fo as not to crofs the direction of it; the right arm is. to hang at the fame time in an eafy and natural pofture down by the fide, fo that if it was put in motion like a pendiulum, it would feek reft in no other pofition.

Why I prefer this pofition of the Firelock to any other is for the following reafons. Firft, that it afords to the Soldier a greater degree of eafe, becaufe it leaves the upper part of the left arm in a flate of reft by its hanging perpendicular, and by that means it is better enabled to fupport the weight of the Firelock, and to keep it more fteady upon the fhoulder than it could poflibly do were it to hang in any other direction. Next, that by the Firelock being held as above, it not only acquires a good reft upon the thoulder, which of courfe fupports it the firmer; but the barrel receives by it fuch a fufficient flope, as not only to prevent it
from eafily falling off, which it would be apt to do were it held more perpendicular, but from annoying thofe in the rear were it more floped.
XV. He is next to take his poft of Exercife, at a convenient diftance in the front of his recruits, and oppofite to their centre, placing hirnfelf in fuch a fituation, that his diftance from either flank may be equal to the extent of the rank of recruits, which will defrribe an equilateral triangle.

Why I pitch upon this diftance for the poft of Exercife, is for this reafon. It is obferved, that the greateft diftinct view, which we can have of any extenfive object, parallel to our own pofition, is comprehended under an angle of fixty degrees, therefore, if the poft of Exercife, was nearer than the above diftance, the angle of obfervation muft be fo much the greater, which would prevent both flanks from being conveniently embraced at one view : and if the diftance was greater, though it would more facilitate and perfect the view, by the angle being lefs, yet it would caufe a greater exertion of the voice, which may not be fo convenient, befides the awkwardnefs of being at a greater diftance than neceffary. On thefe confiderations, I have limited the poft of Exercife, which will be fufficient for any front, not exceeding the extent of a battalion, either for obfervation, or for the advantage of a tolerable good voice.
XVI. He is next to fettle and limit the duration of time to be obferved between each motion of the exercife; in the doing of which, two points muft be guarded againf, which are extremes in themfelves, the one is, that the time be not fo fhort, as to occafion confufion and inaccuracy in the motions by too
great a hurry; and the other is, that it be not fo long as to caufe irregularity by a mifcomputation of it in different minds.

From a confideration of thofe two extremes, willarife the neceffity for that rule or medium which may prevent the firft, and correct the laft: The rule then, which I fhall offer, is no other, but that already prefcribed by General Bland, viz. That the Space between: each motion, be about a fecond of time, or while a man can difinctly count to bimelf, one, two.

This time will be found to be a fufficient paufe to diftinguifh well each motion and its performance, which is all that is wanted in the firft inftance, and by its being fo fhort, it will fo effectually leffen and conceal any irregularity in the laft, arifing from a misjudgement of time, as to give the appearance of unanimity to each motion, and not only this, but a fill greater advantage will accrue, which is, that it will help to accuftom the men betimes to briknefs and difpach, the foul of action, and confequently it will teach them to explode whatever is tedious, dilatory and unneceffary.
XVII. The Serjeant having prefcribed the time which is to be obferved between each motion, he is then to give directions, that each motion be performed with vivacity and correctnefs, but in fuch a manner as to be void of every buffoonifh flourifh and gefticulation, which may render it to common fenfe, or to a judicious eye, a matter of ridicule.
XVIII. He is next to appoint a poft or fation for his corporal; for which purpofe, he is to place him occafionally oppofite to the extreme of either flank, and in that point of vie:v where each recruit may eafi-
ly obferve and fee him, and where he himfelf may have an eye upon him in order to direct him as he fhall think fit.

X1X. He is to provide himfelf with a cane or fick, which he is to carry in his hand as an emblem of his authority; and in order that it may ferve to affift him in fhewing his men by it, how to perform the feveral motions of the exercife:
XX. Matters being thus prepared, he is then to order a profound filence and attention, and to give the following words of command in a deliberate and diftinct tone of voice, laying the emphafis as much as poffible, upon the laft word, and withal he is to let his inftructions be clear and articulate, and delivered according to the directions annexed to each word of command.

> Sест. II. The Parade Exercife.
I. Take Care.

## Direction.

At this precaution the Serjeant is to fee, that a profound filence be inftantly obferved by all the recruits, that their attention be fixed, which they are to fignify by immediately turning their faces to the corporal, whofe motions and attitudes are to ferve them for their guide and imitation.
II. Recover your Firelocks. Two Motions.

## Direction.

Firft Motion.
Seize the Firelock with the right hand juft under the guard, fo as that the fore-finger does touch it, and turn up the lock brifkly at the fame time with the left hand, without altering the direction of the barrel.

## Second Motion,

Raife the firelock off the left fhoulder with the right hand, and, without inclining or moving the head, quit the but-end with the left hand, and bring the firelock round to the right fide with a rapid motion, turning the barrel inwards to the body, and then feize it inftantly with the left hand above the lock, fo that the little finger may nearly touch the hammer fpring, letting the thumb lie pointed upwards, clofe to the barrel along the ftock; the barrel is to be held perpendicular, and fo high, that the lower part of the left arm may be kept level and parallel to the body, and of an equal height with the neck, and in fuch a manner, that the chin may juft appear above it; the upper part of the right arm is alfo to be kept level, and no part of the firelock is to touch the body.

By the recover being thus made on the right fide, it affords a confiderable advantage to the man, and
in fo much, that it enables him to fee clearly whatever. is before him, which could not poffibly be the çafe were the recover to be made in a direct oppofition to his face.

## III. Reft your Firelocks, One Motion.

## Direction.

Bring the firelock brifkly down with both hands, finking it fo low, that the cock might be a little higher than the right hip, or that it may be held in fuch a pofition, as will admit the lower part of the left arm to remain level: On bringing the firelock down, the right toe is to be turned out at the fame time, an half more than it was before, and without altering the due front of the body, placing withal, the right thumb upon the cock, and the fore-finger upon the trigger. From the cock downwards, the firelock is to be held firm againft the body and right thigh, which will give the barrel a fmall outward nope. The muzzle is to be held directly to the front, and without inclining either to the right or to the left; and the left thumb is to be held firm againft the ftock, as directed in the fecond motion of the latt word of command, pointing upwards, and in a line with it.

This attitude is intended for a pofture of defence, and differs but little from that of prefented arms, as will be fhewn farther on.

## IV. Order your Firelocks. Three Motions.

## Dircetion.

## Firft Motion.

Bring the firelock to the right fide of the body with a brifk motion, and without finking it; let the upper part of the barrel come againft the hallow of the fhoulder, flipping up the left hand at the fame time along the fock, as high as the tip of the fhoulder, and then feize the firelock with it, and hold the barrel in that pofition firm and perpendicular.

## Second Motion.

Quit the firelock with the right hand, and fink it with the left, as far as it will go on the right fide, without bringing it in on the body, feizing the firelock at the fame time with the right hand near the muzzle, fo that the top of the thumb, may be as high as the end of the ftock, and extended along the outfide of it, clofe to the barrel.

## Third Motion.

Quit the firelock with the left hand, letting that hand fall eafily down by the left fide, and at the fame time turn in the right toe to its former place, and plant the butt with a brifk motion upon the ground, clofe on the outfide of the right foot, and in a line with both toes, holding the barrel perpendicular, and the fock to the front.

## V. Ground your Fivelocks. Four Motions.

## Direction.

## Firft Motion.

Turn firft the barrel brifkly to you with the right hand, and at the fame time turn the right toe fo as to place it behind the butt and clofe to it, letting the body withal make an half-face to the right.

## Second Motion.

Siip down the right hand along the firelock as far as it will go without inclining the body, and ftep out at the fame time a moderate pace with the left foot; bend the left knce, and lay the firelock with the lock uppermoft upon the ground, placing the infide of the right knee upon the lock, and the barrel pointing directly to the front; in doing of which the face is to. be kept erect, in order the better to obferre the motion of the guide or the corporal, letting withal the left hand hang eafy down by the left thigh.

## Third Motion.

Quit the firelock with the right hand; bring up the left foot to its former ground and ftand upright, making an half-face with the body to the right; both hands are to hang eafy down, only that the right is: to be kept open with the fingers diftended, and the. palim to the front.

## Fourth Motion.

Turn in the right toe over the butt to its former pofition; and turn in alfo, at the fame time, the paln of the right hand to the thigh, and make withal a full front with the body.

The grounding of arms is an operation, to which, in one inftance, I am by no means reconciled; I mean the ufe it is applied to on guard; for if the weather is dry, it cracks and fpoils the focks, and if it be damp it rufts the barrels and locks; and what is ftill of greater confequence, if a guard happens to be kept in a difaffected place, the arms being thus imprudently laid out and expofed, afford the moft convenient opportunity that can be wifhed for to a few men properly armed, to feize upon the whole, and convert them to whatever ufes they fhall think fit; and hence my reafon for wifhing that the practice of grounding the firelocks upon guard was totally rejected and abolifhed.
VI. Take up your Firelocks. Four Motions.

Note, As the performance of this operation, with that of the two following words of command, is only the reverfe of what went before, but the motions the fame, I fhall therefore be the lefs particular in my directions, a reference beigg duly fufficient for the purpofe.

## Direftion.

Firf Motion.
Place the right toe, as before, clofe behind the butt, and turn out alfo the palm of the right hand, making
making withal an half-face to the right at the fame time.

## Second Motion.

Step out with the left foot, bend the left knee, and let the left hand hang eafy down by the left thigh; lay the right knee upon the lock, and take hold of the firelock with the right hand a little above the laft rammer pipe.

## Third Motion.

Rife brifkly with the firelock, ftep back with the left foot to its former pofition, fand erect, and make an half-face to the right at the fame time.

## Fourth Motion.

Quit the firelock with the right hand, and with a quick motion feize it again with the fame hand near the muzzle; turn in the right toe to the infide of the butt, make a full front with your body, and hold the barrel perpendicular.

## VII. Reft your Firelocks. Three Motions.

## Direction.

## Firft Mation.

Slip down the right hand along the barrel, as far as it will go, without inclining your body, and there hold the firclock between the thumb and fore-finger, the thumb being inwards, and each pointing downwards along the frock.

## Second Motion.

Raife the firelock with the right hand fo high, that the cock may be a little higher than the hip, and feize the firelock with the left at the fame time, 2 little above the hammer fpring.

## Third Motion,

Quit the firelock with the right hand, and feize it with the fame clofe under the guard, placing the thumb upon the cock, and the forefinger upon the trigger.
VIII. Shoulder your Firelocks. Two Motions.

## Direction.

Firf Motion.
Quit the firelock with the left hand, and with the right bring it round to the left fide, with a rapid motion, placing the butt-end at the fame inftant, in the palm of the left hand, with the firelock upon the left fhoulder, in a proper pofition. (See Sect. I. Inftruction XIV of this Chapter.) In bringing the firelock round to the left, the right toe is to be turned into its proper pofition, the right thumb and forefinger are to be taken off the cock and trigger, giving the firelock at the fame time, fuch a turn in the right hand, as that the barrel may be brought to the front, letting the thumb be pointed upwards upon the ferew plate oppofite the'lock.

Second Motion.
Quit the firelock with the right hand, and let it fall eafily down by the right fide.

## IX. Secure your Firelocks. Three Motions.

## Direction.

Firf Motion.
Seize the firelock with the right hand at the fcutcheon plate; fo that the fore finger may touch the lower part of the guard, letting the nuckles be to the front, with the thumb placed upright on the infide of the fock. The firelock is in that manner to be held firm to the body, and without altering in the leaft the pofition of it.

## Second Motion.

Quit the butt with the left hand, and feize the firelock at the fame time, with the fame hand, at the tip of the left fhoulder, fo as that the little finger may juft touch the top of the fhoulder; the nuckles are to be placed in the front, and the thumb extended on the outfide along the ftock, and clofe to the barrel.

## Third Motion.

Quit the firelock with the right hand, and turn the butt, at the fame inftant, with a quick motion of the left hand under the left arm, letting the muzzle drop
forward, which will occafion the barrel to be underneath, or the rammer to be uppermoft: the right hand is to hang eafy down by the right fide; the upper part of the left arm, is to be kept in a perpendicular direction; and the firelock is to reft a little upon the left hip, where it is to be preffed clofe to the fide by the arm, and held firm to the body.

## X. Shoulder your. Firelocks. Three Motions,

Note. This operation being exactly the fame in all its motions, as that of the laft word of command, only being reverfely performed, I fhall therefore be the lefs precife in my direction, as a reference will be fufficient for the purpofe.

## Direction.

## Firft Motion.

Bring up the firelock with the left hand, and place it as before upon the left fhoulder; and at the fame time feize it with the right hand at the fcutcheon plate.

Second Motion.
Quit the firelock with the left hand, and inftantly, after feize it with the fame hand under the butt.

## Third Motion.

Quit the firelock with the right hand, letting it fall brikly down by the right fide.

XI, Fix

## XI. Fix your Bayonets. Seven Motions.

## Direction.

## Firft and Second Motions,

Handle the firelock as is directed in the firft and fecond motions of the ninth word of command.

## Third Motion.

Quit the firelock with the right hand, and let it fall down in the left hand as far as it will go. on the left fide, turning the thumb inwards, and the barrel downwaids, at the fame time; make withal an half face to the left, on the left heel, and feize the firelock at that inftant with the right hand at the end of the fock near the muzzle, fo as that the thumb may bear againft the end of the fock at the infide, while the fingers are placed on the outfide; the left arm is to hang perpendicular; the barrel is to be held firm againft the left thigh; and without letting it incline either to the right or to the left, the lower part of the right arm is to be kept level, fo as to make a right angle with the upper part, which will determine the flope of the barrel, and the diftance of the muzzle from the face: and in order to make the : requifite half face to the left, the left toe is to be turned about an half more to the left; bringing up at the fame time the right foot and to place it fo as to make it ftand at right angles with the left, letting the right heel be oppofite to the centre of the left foot; and at the diftance of about feven inches from it.

Fourth

Fourth Motion.
Quit the firelock with the right hand, and with it feize the handle of the bayonet, fo that the thumb may be placed upon the fhank of it.

Fifth Motion.
Draw the bayonet with a quick motion, and place the focket of it, directly over the muzzle of the firelock, holding the blade in a direction with the barrel.

## Sixth Motion.

Enter the muzzle into the focket of the bayonet, fo that the fight upon the end of the barrel, may freely enter the grove of the focket; then thruft down the bayonet upon it, and turn the blade to the left, and afterwards give the bayonet another thruft downwards to fix it.

## Seventh Motion.

Quit the handle of the bayonet with the right hand, and feize the firelock with it, as above directed in the third motion, at the end of the ftock near the muzzle.

## XII. Shoulder your Firelocks. Three Motions.

## Dircction.

Firf Motion.
Quit the firelock with the right hand; fall back with the right foot to a full front, and turn the left toe to its former pofition. Place the firetock at the fame time upon the left fhoulder with the left hand. and feize the firelock with the right hand at the fcutcheon plate, as is directed in the firft motion of the tenth word of command.

## Second and Third Motions.

Sce the fecond and third motions of the tenth word of command.
XIII. Prefent your Arms. Three Motions.

## Direction.

Note, The performance of this operation, is exactly the fame as that directed in the fecond and third words of command, but with this fmall difference, that the right thumb is not to be placed upon the cock, nor the fore-finger upon the trigger; this attitude being intended for nothing more than the cereremony or form of a falute.

## XIV. Face to the Right. Three Motions.

Direction.

## Firft Motion.

Bring up the firelock to the pofition of a recover, as is directed in the fecond motion of the fecond word of command, turning in the right toe to its former pofition at the fame time.

## Second Motion.

Turn to the right upon the left heel, with a fpring or brifk motion of the body, fo as to make a full face to the right, placing the right foot as before at its proper diftance from the left.

## Third, Motion.

Bring down the firelock with both hands to the attitude of prefent your arms, as is directed in the laft word of command.
XV. Face to the Right. Three Motions.

## Direction.

Note, This operation is performed in the fame way as that of the laft word of command.

XVI. Face

## XVI. Face to the Right about. Three Motions.

Direction.
Note, This operation is exactly the fame as that of the laft, but with this fmall difference, that as a femicircle is now to be defcribed, a greater fpring of the body, is the more requifite to perform it.

## XVII. Face to the Left. Three Motions.

## Direction.

Note, This with the two following words of command, differ no ways in their operations from the three preceding ones, but in this, that the right foot is now to be brought up, inftead of falling back with it as before; the revolution to the left, upon the left heel, and the divifions of the circle being equally the fame, and therefore require no further directions.

## XVIII. Face to the Left. Three Motions.

XIX. Face to the Left about. Three Motions,

Why I prefer the above method of Facing upon one heel, to that of performing it upon both heels, as is now practifed, is for this reafon; that when fwords were in ufe with the infantry, the obftructions which they always occafioned in the above revolutions, by the points fticking out from the mens fides, frequently incommoded the men of the fame rank fo much
much, as to caufe them to joftle and interrupt each other, which often removed them from the centre point of their revolution, and of courfe altered their due diftances from one another; and therefore it was then held neceffary, in order to remedy and avoid thofe inconveniencies, to oblige each man to perform his revolutions upon both heels at once, as being a more firm pofition, though in the doing of which, a greater number of motions fhould be neceffary, and confequently would take up more time, than if the revolutions were fimply to be performed upon one heel; but fwords being now laid afide, and as a man can turn fufficiently firm and fteady upon one heel, by the fpring or velocity of his revolution, I therefore choofe, as well for the fake of faving time, as to avoid every unneceffary motion, to adopt the former method of turning or facing upon one heel, inftead of performing it now upon both, as is now practifed.
XX. Sboulder your Firelocks. Two Motions.

## Direction.

See the eighth word of command.

## XXI. Charge your Bayonets. Three Motions.

## Direction.

Firft and Second Motions.
Come to a recover as is directed in the fecond word of command.

## Third Motion.

Spring back with the right foot, placing the centre of it clofe behind the heel of the left; turn the left toe at the fame tinre directly to the front, fo that each foot may, in that pofition, ftand at right angles with the other, or formed like the letter T ; quit the firelock with the right hand at the fame inftant, giving it fuch a turn in the left without finking it, that the muzzle may fall directly forward, and that the firelock may then reft upon the left elbow, and be in a line with the lower part of that arm, and withal feize the end of the butt in the palm of the right hand, fo that the tops of the fingers may appear on the outfide, while the thumb is placed on the infide and pointed upwards; the man is to look forwards, and to keep liis face full to the front; the barrel is to lie level, and the firelock is to be held breaft high, and fupported between the forefinger and thumb of the left hand, which are to be pointed towards the butt, along each fide of the ftock, fo that the end of the fore finger may come almoft clofe to the hammer fpring.

## XXII. Pufb your Bayonets. Two Motions،

## Direction.

## Firft Motion.

Look well to the front, pufh brifkly forward the firelock with both hands, ftepping out with the left foot,
foot, and placing at the fame time the end of the butt againft the left breaft; the barrel is to be kept level in the pufh, and the ftep is to be the length of a pace, or two feet and a half, that the Soldier may afterwards the more eafily, and with greater command recover himfelf. In this pofition, the left knee is to be a little bent, in order to bring the body more forward, and that the pulh may annoy at a greater diftance, keeping withal the right knee firm and ftraight, to the intent of fortifying the body againft any repulfive force the bayonet may meet with.

## Secand Motion.

Bring home the firelock to a charge, ftepping back with the left foot to its former pofition.

Note, This laft motian does more properly belong to the following word of command, but it is here introduced in order to prēvent a violence of pain to the left arm, which it would otherwife occafion, were it for fo long a while diftended, as the face of time common between two words of cammand.

## XXIII. Recover your Bayonets, One Motion.

## Direction.

Quit the butt-end with the right hand, and at that inffant feize the firelock with the fame hand at the fcutcheon plate, bring up the right foot, and coming to a recauer as before.

L 2 XXIV. Shoulder

# XXIV. Shoulder your Firelocks. Two Motions. 

## Direction.

See the eighth word of command.

## XXV. Advance your Firelocks. Three Motions.

> Direction.

Firft Motion.
Seize the firelock with the right hand, as is direct$e d$ in the firft motion of the ninth word of command.

Second Motion.
Quit the butt end with the left hand, and at that inftant lay hold of the cock with the fame hand, in fuch a manner, that the little finger may be placed under it, and clofe to the breech, letting the cock be held faft in the hand.

Third Motion.
Quit the firelock with the right hand, and then let the firelock fall directly down by the left fide; as far as it will go in the left hand.

The advantage of this pofition is in my opinion, confiderably preferable to our prefent method of holding the firelock in the right hand, and for the following reafons. Firft, that by its being held in the
left hand, the right, which in general, is the moft astive, is left at liberty, and muft therefore be more graceful, as well as more advantageous to the man himfelf. Next, it gives no fort of uneafinefs in carrying it, becaufe the man's arm hang ftraight and perpendicular, and therefore more capable of bearing the weight " of the firelock; nor are his fingers in this pofition fo much crampt as in the other, by the conftrained aukwardnefs of holding it. And laftly; I prefer this pofition for a particular ufe and convenience, when the line is ordered to advance and charge, which I fhall explain farther on.

## XXVI. Sboulder your Firelocks. Three Motions.

## Direction.

## Firft Motion.

Raife the firelock with the left hand, fo high upon the left fhoulder, as to place the upper part of the guard under the left breaft, and then feize it with the right hand, as is directed in the firft motion of the ninth word of command.

Second and Third Motions.
See the fecond and third motions of the tenth word of command.

## XXVII. Return your Bayonets. Six Motions.

## Direction.

Firft, Second, and Third Motions.
See the firft, fecond, and third motions of the cleventh word of command.

Fourth Motion.
Strike up the bayonet under the fhank with a quick motion of the right hand, fo as to clear the fight from the groove it lies in; then turn the bayonet to the right, and flip it off the muzzle, holding the blade perpendicular, and letting the upper part of the handle be as high as the muzzle, and a little to the right of it, and in a line with it.

## Fifth Motion.

Enter the point of the bayonet into the fcabbard, and thruft it home.

Sixth Motion.
Quit the handle of the bayonet, and then feize the firelock at the end of the fock near the muzzle, as is directed in the feventh motion of the eleventh word of command.

## XXVIII. Shoulder your Firelocks. Three

 Motions.Direction.
See the twelfth word of command.

## XXIX. Support your Firelocks. Three Motions. <br> Direction.

Firf Motion.
Seize the firelock with the right hand, as is directed in the firft motion of the ninth word of command.

## Second Motion.

Quit the butt end with the left hand, and place the centre of the lower part of the left arm directly under the cock, fo that the cock may reft upon it; in this pofition the firelock is to be held firm to the body by the left arm, and without altering the flope of the barrel.

> Third Motion.

Quit the firelock with the right hand, letting the hand fall down by the right fide.

## XXX. Handle your Firelocks. Three Motions.

## Direction.

## Firf Motion.

Seize the firelock with the right hand, as is directed in the firft motion of the ninth word of command.

## Second, and Third Motions.

Handle the firelock as is directed in the fecond and third motions of the tenth word of command.

## S e c t. III. The Field Exercife.

## Take Care to Prime and Load.

At this Precaution, the Serjeant is to fee that his men, who are ftill to remain drawn up in a fingle rank, do carry well their arms, that they ftand in proper order, and at equal diftances from each other; and that their bodies be kept upright, their faces erect, and their attention well fixed.

As there is no one part of the exercife of greater moment than that of properly priming and loading, fo there is none that requires more true care and exactnefs; and though this is univerfally admitted, yet it too often happens, that through too great a folicitude of making foldiers appear expert and quick in this performance, they are rather taught to reprefent the thing than to do it well. This being but too much the practice, it is therefore no uncommon circumfance to obferve when foldiers are loading, that by the hurry
hurry and inaccuracy of their motions, a confiderable part of the powder is cither fpilt, or fo badly emptied out of the cartridge, as either to weaken the proper force of the charge, or to prevent it from aking.fire : befides which, there is that of ramming down the car-, tridge, which is too frequently performed in fo flight a manner, that the cartridge is either left to fick in the barrel at fome diftance from the chamber, or to lie fo loofe and unfettled at the bottom of it, that the refiftance given to the explofion of the firft powder that takes fire is fo very fmall, that a great part of the remaining powder is blown out of the barrel, before it can be confumed in fire. The ill confequence of which need not be pointed out, it being fo evident in itfelf, and fo eafily comprehended; but the advantage arifing from thè cartridgè being well rammed home is in nothing fo demonftrable, as in that of a fcrew-barrel gun, when the ball being well confined, or fimilarly well rammed home, though its charge of powder is not in quantity the tenth of what is contained in a common cartridge, yet it fhall throw its ball to the full as far as any firelock can with a full charge, and for no other reafon, but that the whole of the powderin the fcrew barrel gun is confurned in flame before the delivery of the ball; confequently as the flight or force of a ball will always be proportioned to the circumftance of emptying well the cartridge, and of ramming it well down, I fhall therfore direct, that each motion in priming and loading be performed with the greateft accuracy and diftinctnefs, and without the leaft flight, being fatisfied that one fire, well prepared and coofly delivered, will do more execution than ten that are given in hurry and confufion,

## I. Advance your Firelocks. Three Motions.

See the twenty fifth word of command of the laft Section, and the obfervation.

The Field Exercife being a reprefentation of what foldicrs are to do in time of action, the above pofition of the firclock I introduce here as preparatory to it, and for this reafon. It has hitherto been a cuftom, when foldiers come to advance againft the enemy, to carry their firelocks תouldercd, with their bayonets fixed; by carrying the arms thus elevated, they become of courfe the more expofed, and more liable to be damaged by the fire of the enemy. And therefore it is no uncommon thing to obferve, that what with the fhot of artillery, and that of fmall arms, the part of our arms which is fo elevated and expofed is frequently either broke, or the barrels fo dinted in, as to be unfit for ufe, which to prevent as much as can be, is the defign of the above pofition: and befides, there is not orily that advantage accruing from it, but it is a pofition from which a foldier can more conveniently make ready than from the boulder, there being only one motion, infead of three, to effect it.

## II. Open your Pans. Three Motions,

## - Direetion.

Firft Motion.
Bring the firelock with the left hand round to the right fide, to the pofition of a reft, feizing it at the fcutcheon plate with the right hand, then quit the lock with the left hand, and with the fame hand feize the firelock at that inftant, juft above the hammer fpring.

This pofition differs only in thefe particulars from the true reft, that neither the right thumb is to be upon the cock, nor the fore finger upon the trigger, nor the right toe turned out.

Second Motion.
Bring the firelock up to a recover, and then turn the butt with a quick motion, clofe up under the right arm ; quit the firelock with the right hand, and place at that inftant the thumb againft the face of the hammer : in turning the butt under the arm, the left wrift is not to be funk or raifed, which will determine the elevation of the muzzle. The left eibow is now to be kept clofe to the body, in order to hold the firelack the firmer, and to fupport the weight of it the better; and the upper part of the right arm is to be preffed well againft the butt to keep it alfo the more firm and fteady in its place.

## Third Motion.

Throw back the hammer with the right thumb, which will open the pan, letting the thumb lie on the outfide edge of the hammer, and in the fame direction with it.
III. Prepare your Cartridges. Three Motions.

## Direction.

Firft Motion.
Slap down the right hand upon the pouch with a quick motion, and take out a cartridge, holding the top of it between the thumb and forefinger.

Second Motion.
Bring the cartridge with a quick motion up to your mouth, and bite off the top of it almoft clofe to the powder.

Third Motion.
Bring the cartridge from the mouth to the outfide. of the pan, holding the top of the cartridge well fecured between the thumb and fore finger, and of an equal height with the pan.

## IV. Prime. Two Motions.

## Direction.

## Firft Motion.

Turn up the right hand, and Thake or empty as much powder out of the cartridge into the pan as will little better than half fill it, or as much as will let the hammer fhut clofe down upon it, always remembering that fhould there be more powder in the pan than. it will contain, it will hinder the hammer from fhutting down clofe uponit, which will expofe the priming to any damp or wet that may come near it : and by that means prevent it from taking fire.

## Second Motion.

- Secure well the mouth of the cartridge by clofing it with the thumb and fore-finger, and placing; at the fame time, the three remaining fingers behind the hammer.


## V. Sbut your Pans. Two Motions.

> Direction.

Firft Motion.
Pull down the hammer clofe upon the pan.
Second Motion.
Seize the firelock at the fcutcheon. plate with the right hand, holding it between the ball of the thumb and the three difengaged fingers.
VI. Caft about, to load. Firft Motion. DireEtion.

Fall back with the right foot, and make a full and proper face to the right; quit the firelock with the right hand, and turn the muzzle to the rear, letting the firelock at the fame time fall down before in the left hand as far as it can go; and then feize it with the right hand clofe to the muzzle, holding the barrel between the middle and fore finger. In this pofition the firelock is to be held very firm by the left hand againft the front of the left thigh, in order to keep the muzzle fteady, and by that means to expedite the loading.

VII, Load with Cartridges, Two Motions.

## Direction.

Firf Motion.
Turn the right hand, and empty well the powder out of the cartridge into the barrel.

## Second Motion.

Thruft the cartridge cafe after the powder with the forefinger into the barrel, holding the barrel at the fame time between the thumb and middle finger, and letting the top of the forefinger remain in the muzzle.

## VIII. Ram. doren your Cartridges. Seven Motions.

## Direction.

## Firf Motion.

Seize the rammer with the right hand, holding it between the thumb and the middle bone of the middle finger, fo that the top of that finger may point downwards with the rammer; and place at the fame time the end of the forefinger upon the top of the rammer.

## Second Motion.

Draw out the rammer as far as the arm will admit, throwing back the firelock at the fame time with the left hand, in order that a greater length of the rammer may: then be drawn out, which will facilitate at the next motion, the drawing it clear out of the pipes.

## Third Motion.

Bring back the firelock to its former place with the left hand, and quit the rammer at the fame time with
with the right; and feize it with the fame hand a little above the muzzle, holding it as a pen is held, between the thumb and the two fingers pointing upwards.

Fourth Motion.
Dart out the rammer from the pipes, giving it at the fame time fuch a turn in the hand, as to place the top of it againft your waift; flip down the hand along the rammer, fo low as to be within four inches of its top, and there hold it firm and parrallel to the barrel, the thumb pointing upwards.

Fifth Motion.
Put the top of the rammer into the barrel, and thruft it down as far as the hand will let it go.

## Sixth Motion.

Ouit the rammer, and feize it again towards the middle of it, thrufting it then down the barrel, as far as the hand will admit, the thumb frill pointing upwards.

Seventh Motion.
Quit the rammer, and feize it at the end, holding it between the thumb and fore finger, and thruft it down as far as it can go, and afterwards knock it hard twice or thrice againit the end of the cartridge, by way of fettling it in the chamber.

## IX. Return jour Rammers. Five Motions.

Direction.
Firft and Second Motions,
Perform thefe motions as directed in the fecond and third motions of the laft word of command.

Third Motion.
Draw the rammer out of the barrel, and turn it fo in the hand at the fame time, as to place the end of it againft your waift, and then hold it parallel to the barrel; flip down the hand along the rammer, within twelve inches of the end, or within the diftance, that will leave fufficient length for the end of the rammer to enter the fecond pipe at the next motion.

Fourth Motion.
Enter the end of the rammer into the firft or muzzle pipe, and thruft it down as far as the forefinger: and thumb will admit, but in fuch a manner, that the palm of the land may reft in the motion upon the muzzle, with the fingers and thumb pointing downwards with the rammer.

## Fifth Motion.

Quit the rammer, and place the end of the forefinger upon the top of it, holding it underneath, between the thumb and middle finger, and then thruft it home.

## X. Advance your Firelocks. Two Motions.

## Direction.

## Firf Motion.

Face to the left, or bring up the right foot, fo as to make a full front, and at the fame inftant quit the firelock with the right hand, and with the fame hand feize it at the fcutcheon plate, holding then the firelock in the pofition of a reft, as directed in the firft motion of the fecond word of command of this. fection.

## Second Motion.

Quit the firelock with the left hand, and at the fame time bring it brifkly round to the left fide with the right hand, and then feize it by the cock with the left, and quit it with the right, as directed in the third motion of the twenty-fifth word of command of the laft fection.

## XI. As front rank make ready. Three Motions.

## Direction.

## - Firft Motion.

Bring the firelock with the left hand round to the right fide, to the pofition of a reft, feizing it at the fcutchon-plate with the right hand; then quit the cock with the left, and with the fame hand, feize the firelock at that inftant, juft above the hammer fpring,
placing the right thumb upon the cock, and the forefinger upon the trigger. As to what is farther relative to this pofition of the reff, fee the third word of command of the laft fection.

Why I prefer the reft to the recover, in point of making ready, is for the following reafons. Firf, becaufe the firelock in that pofition, is more fheltered from the fire of the enemy than at the recover. Next, the weight of it being not fo burdenfome and painful to the arms, as it is at the recover. And laftly, becaufe a foldier can cock or balf cock his firelock with far gieater eafe at the $r e f t$, he having then the whole force of his right hand and arm to effect $\mathrm{it}_{\mathrm{j}}$ with the help of having the butt in fome meafure fixed or held firm againft his right thigh, but at the recover, he can have no fuch advantage, becaufe the butt has then no refting place to refift the force of pulling back the cock, and becaufe the man's whole purchafe is then confined to the ftrength only of his thumb, which is rendered more feeble and ineffectual by the length of the fpan from the lower part of the guard to the top of the cock; and hence, it is no uncommon thing to obferve, that when it is required of a foldier to cock or balf cock at the recover, to fee him perform it with great feeming pain and difficulty.

## Second Motion.

Hold the firelock firm againft the right thigh with the left hand; raife the right elbow a little, in order to have the greater purchafe in pulling back the cock, then cock or draw back the cock to the catch with
the right thumb; bringing the elbow clofe down to the fide at the fame time. '

## -Third Motion.

Step fo far back with the right foot, that the right knee, on bringing it down to the ground, may be placed in a line with the left heel, planting the butt end of the firelock, at the fame time upon the ground, directly oppofite to the right thigh, and in a line with the left to.e. The right thumb and fore finger are fill to remain upon the cock and trigger. The barrel is to be held perpendicular by the left hand, which is alfo to continue placed a little above the hammer-fpring, and the body is likewife to be kept upright.

## XII. Prefent. One Motion,

## Direction.

Take the thumb from off the cock, raife the firelock with both hands, dropping the muzzle to the front, and placing at the fame time the butt-end firm againft the hollow fpace between the breaft and right fhoulder, In bringing the firelock thus to a prefent, the left knee is to be turned a little out, in order to let the body incline forward with more eafe; which is intended as well for the convenience of bringing the right eye to the barrel for taking aim, as for that of fortifying the body ogainft the recoil of the firelock at firing. In prefenting, the object to be fired at, is to be brought with the eye, in a direct line with the
upper furface of the breech, and with the top of the fight at the muzzle; nor is the point to be aimed at to exceed the height of three feet, or the centre heighth of a man, in order to make an allowance for the rife or depreffion of the ball in its flight; and and withal, the left elbow is to be turned down that the hand may the better fupport the weight of the firelock, and of courfe keep it more fteady.

## XIII. Fire. Two Motions.

## Direction.

Firf Motion.
Pull the trigger liard with the fore finger, but not with a jerk or fudden motion, as that will be apt to alter the direction of the barrel ; the centre bone of that finger is to be placed againft the extremity of the trigger, in order to obtain greater ftrength and purchafe, in raifing the catch or dog from off the tumbler, and that the cock in confequence, may come the more fuddenly down.

## Second Motion,

Raife the muzzle, bring up the right foot to its former pofition, fand erect, and bring the firelock to a reft.
XIV. Half cock your Firelocks. Two Motions.

## Direction.

Firft Motion.

Take the forefinger from off the trigger, raife the right elbow, and place the right thumb, at the fame time, upon the upper jaw of the cock.

## Second Motion.

Pull back the cock to the firf notch or catch of the tumbler, as directed in the fecond motion of the eleventh word of command, viz. Make ready.

## XV. Prime and load. Twenty-five Motions.

## Direction.

Firft Motion.
Take the thumb from off the cock, holding the firelock in the right hand at the fcutcheon plate; bring up the firelock with both hands at the fame time, and place the butt-end clofe under the right arm, as directed in the fecond motion of the fecond word of command of this fection.

Note, The remaining twenty-four motions of priming, loading, and of coming to advanced firelocks, are performed in exactly the fame manner as directed in the foregoing words of command of this fection, viz:

Words

Words of command. Motions,
3. Prepare your Ciartridges,
4. Prinke,
5 Shut your Pans,
6. Caft about to Load,
7. Load with Cartridge,
8. Rame down your Cartridges,
9. Return your Rammers,
10. Advance your Firelocks,

## XVI. As Centre Rank make ready. Two, Motions:

Direction.
Firft and Second Motions.
Thefe motions are to be performed in the fame manner as directed in the firft and fecond motions: of the eleventh word of command of this fection.

## XVII. Prefent. One Motion.

## Direction.

Take, your thumb from off the cock, ftep forward one pace with the left foot, but a little obliquely to the left, and at the fame time drop the barrel to a prefent, placing the butt-end firm againft the hollow. between the breaft and right fhoulder; bend a little the

## MILITARY DISCIPLINE. 103

the left knee, which will occafion the body to incline forward, and by that means, the eye will come more conveniently to the fights upon the barrel, for the purpofe of taking aim; and laftly, keep the right knee firm and ftiff in order to fortify the body againft the recoil of the firelock at firing. As to the other requifites in prefenting, fee the twelfth word of command of this fection.

Note, This being a new attitude or method of prefenting, the reafon of which will be omitted here, and explained farther on, at a more convenient place,

## XVIII. Firé. Twenty-nine Motions.

## Direction.

Firf Motion.
Perform this operation, as directed in the firft motion of the thirteenth word of command of this fection.

Second Motion.
Raife the muzzle, and come down to a reft, bringing back at the fame time the left foot to its former pofition.

Note, The remaining tiventy-feven motions of balf cocking, priming, loading, and of coming to advanced firelocks, are to be performed on this, and all future firings, without any word of command, (except when ordered to the contrary) as directed in the fourteenth and fifteenth words of command of this
fection, taking care withal, that each motion be performed by all the men together, at one and the fame time.

## XIX. As Rear Rank make ready. .Two - Motions.

Direction.
Firft and Second Motions.
This operation is to be performed in exactly the fame manner as directed in the fixteenth word of command of this fection.

## XX. Prefent. One Motion.

Direction.
This operation is performed in much the fame manner as that directed in the preceding feventeenth word of cornmand, but with this fmall difference, that inftead of ftepping obliquely forward to the left with the left foot, as there mentioned, on dropping to the prefent, you are here to ftep about twelve inches obliquely back to the right with the right foot, bending the left knee, and keeping ftiff the right, for the fame reafons as there given.

## XXI. Fire. Twenty-nine Motions.

## Direction.

Thefe motions are performed in the fame manner as directed in the eighteenth word of command of this fection, except, that inftead of bringing back the left foot, as there prefcribed in the fecond motion, the right foot is here to be brought up to its former pofition on coming down to the reft, in order to proceed to balf cock, prime, \&c.

The recruits being made perfect in all the foregoing firings of the different ranks, they are now to be told off and formed into three ranks, in order that the whole may then fire together, and according to the refpective ranks they fhall ftand in; for which purpofe the Serjeant is to proceed as directed in Chap. II. Sect. VI. Art. II. word of command, firft, fecond, third, fourth, fifth, fixth, feventh, eighth, and ninth.-----

Note, When foldiers are thus drawn up in clofe. order, in order to fire all. together, the method of placing the feet. of the centre and rear rank men for that purpofe, as directed at the prefent in the feventeenth and twentieth words of command of this fectioh, is calied locking up.

## Caution.

Take care the whole to make ready according to your refpective ranks, viz. front as front, centre as centre, rear as rear.

## XXII. Make ready.

## Direction.

This operation is performed in the fame manner as directed in the eleventh, fixteenth, and nineteenth words of command of this fection.

## XXIII. Prejent.

Direction.
See the twelfth, feventeenth, and twentieth words of command of this fection.

## XXIV. Fire.

## Direction.

See the thirteenth, eighteenth, and twenty-firft word of command of this fection.

When men are thus drawn up in two or more ranks in order to fire, there are in the execution of which, two very effential points, which require the niceft attention, and are of the utmof confequence in themfelves; namely, that the men neither annoy one another by their fire, nor obftruct each other in taking proper aim: For thefe important purpofes there have been various fchemes propofed; but.I confefs, of all I have as yet feen or heard of, there are none with which I could be fatisfied. And to fupport my opi-•
nion. I flall firft defcribe our prefent method of locking $u p$, and obferve, as I proceed, the difadvantage and inconveniencies of that operation', to the end, that the plan, which I fhall afterwards offer for a remedy, may the better be comprehended and received.

Our method then is, fuppofing the front rank man kneeling, in order to prefent, he of the centre rank in the fame file is directed, firft to place his left foot clofe to the infide of the former's right foot, and then to ftep obliquely back to the right with his right foot.

By this difpofition it is evident, that the body. of the centre rank man muft be full an balf, if not more, to the right of him who is kneeling, confequently, when he comes to-drop his firelock directly before him to a prefent, the frelock muft be as much to the right alfo of hime his file leader; now fhould that place where the firelock is fo prefented, be the interval where the platoon officer is pofted, it is likewife as evident; that he the officer muft be deprived hatf his room by the pofition of the firelock, which mult of courfe ftraiten him in his interval, : and render him lefs active in it.----Here then lies one objection to this method.---And with refpeet to the foldier himfelf, he is no lefs incommoded, but another manner; for being obliged to place his left foot in the above pofition, he cannot, as his left leg will then bear againft the rump of his file , leader, bend his left knee, in order to let his body incline forward for the purpofe, either of fortifying himfelf againf the recoil of his firelock at firing, or for the convenience of bringing his eye with eafe to the barrel for taking aint: And hence the reafon of that extreme vakwardnefs
among the generality of foldiers, when the come to take aim, by inclining their heads clofe down to the tip of their right thoulders, which would otherwife be avoided, and the thing better done, were the left kree to be bent at the time. See the feventeenth-word of command of this fection. Here is alfo another objection :

As to the rear rank man of the fame file, his fituation is to the full as inconvenient as that of him of the centre rank, if not more fó; for being, by this means, obliged to place alfo his left foot on the infide of the right foot of him before him, and to ftep obliquely back with his right foot alfo, his body muft of courfe be likewife an half, if not more, to the right of him before him, fo that when he alfo comes to prejent, the whole fpace or interval of the platoon officer - is evidently occupied; or taken up, by the firelocks of the centre and rear rank men, therefore, as the platoon officer is, by this means, totally excluded the room of his interval; he finds himfelf obliged, in order to avoid the annoyance of the fire, cither to direct the rear rank man on his left, not to fire at all. or to fall back on the platoon on his right, to fhelter himfelf; either then of thefe circumftances muif be allowed to be very improper, and yet by our method there is no remedy for it; and as this is always the cafe, even at exercife, how much greater muft the embarraffiment be in time of action, by having added to it the hurry and confufion which men are then frequiently in ; or fhould foldiers happen to engage the enemy by night, or in a thick fog, the danger will be greater of their not feeing their officer, and of courfe the confequence may. be fatal to him; and of which I have
heard of fome melancholy inftances. Here again is another weighty objection to our prefent method.--.And with regard to the rear rank man himfelf, he alfo finds when he comes to prefent, his left arm, which fupports and holds fteady his firelock, fo much incommoded by the right elbow of the man before him, as to prevent him from taking any fixed or certain aim; befides the further obftruction he receives from the fame man, who hinders him from leaning his body forward for the purpofe of taking an eafy and ready aim. Here then is likewife another great objection.

And to add fill more to the impropriety of this our prefent method, there is that of the rear ranks being obliged at locking. up, to quit the ground of their refpective files, by each man placing himfelf to the right of his immediate file leader, as above fhewn, by which means; when they have fired, they muft either fhuffle back again to their former ground, or remain expofed to the fire of the enemy, while they are going on with their priming and loading.: As to the operation of thuffling back again to their former ground, it is truly ridiculous and unfightly. And as to that of their remaining unneceffarily expofed to the fire of the enemy, while they are thus priming and loadirig, it is abfolutely erroneous, and contrary to principle, becaufé no man ought to be expofed, where there is no occafion. Here is alfo another ftrīking objection.

To obviate then and remove thefe feveral objections, is the intent of my prefent fcheme, which is as follows: Firf, the ranks are to be clofed to quarter diftance, as is directed in Chap. II. Sect. VI,

Art II. word of command IX. Then the whole is to make ready, prefent, and fire, as directed in the three laft words of command of this iection. By that method it may be obferved, that the man of the centre rank receives no obftructions whatever from him of the front, as he fteps with his left foot a little obliquely forward to the left of him, nor can he in the leaf incommode the platoon officer with his firelock at the prefent, becaufe it is directly over the right fide of his file leaders head, who is kneeling. And with regard to the rear rank man of the fame file, be can never clafh or interfere with him of the centre rank, becaufe they prefent in oppofite inclinations of their bodies; that is, he of the centive fteps forward a little obliquely to the left with his left foot, while he of the rear fteps fill a little more obliquely backward to the right, ' with his right foot, by which means they ftand quite clear of each other; nor can this fame man incommode, in the leaft, the platoon officer; with his firelock at the prefent, becaufe it is placed almoft over the outfide of the right fhoulder of his file leader, who is kneeling in the front rank.

And laftly, it may be obferved, that by this difpofition made of the centre and rear rank men in locking. $u p$, they never quit the ground of their refpective file, as they do by our prefent method, becaufe each man always keeps one foot fixed, which enables thofe men, on having fired, to bring the oblique feet the more readily to their former ground; and by that means to. place themfelves at once in the due direction of their refpective files; and of courfe under the immodiate cover of their file leader, while they are going on with their priming and lloading. But to return,

After the recruits have been inftructed, as above directed, to fire fanding, they are next to be taught how to fire advancing and retreating; and in order to which, they are to be divided into two or more platoons, as their number will admit, and then each platoon made to fire feparately, and diftinctly from the other, and according to the following directions.

Caution.
Take care to fire advancing.

## XXV. March.

Direction.
The whole are to ftep off, beginning the march with the left feet.

## XXVI. Right Hand Platoon make ready.

## Direction.

This operation is to be performed by each rank of the platoon, as directed in the eleventh, fixteenth, and nineteenth words of command of this fection, but with this fmall difference, that upon cocking, the platoon to fire is to advance beyond the other, by taking three large fteps, and with a quicker movement than ordinary, beginning with the left foot; and then the front rank is to kneel, and the other two ranks
are to lock $u p$, obferving their proper diftances from each cther.

The intent of making the firing platoon to adyance thus before the fuftaining platoon, is for the following reafons. Firft, that it may the better deliver its fire clear of any obftructions which it might receive from the other: and before it comes up to join it in the line. Next, that the fuftaining platoon may, not, by being too far advanced before the other, be expofed to its fire. And laftly; that the fame platoon may not, by any oblique inclination which it might take when too much advanced, fhut out or prevent the other from conveniently coming in again to its former place after firing. But befides the above pre-. cautions, there is another confiderable advantage refulting from making the firing platoon thus to advance, before the other, which is, that this movement carries on the line much better, and gives a more intrepid appearance to the whole in advancing.

## XXVII. Prefent.

See the twenty-third word of command of this fection.

## XXVIII. Fire.

See the twenty-fourth word of command of this fection.
XXIX. Left

## XXIX. Left-hand Platoon make ready.

Note, This operation, together with the prefenting and firing, are performed in the fame manner as that of the right-hand platoon, to which I refer,

## Caution.

Take care to fire retreating.

## XXX. To the Right about. March.

## Direction.

The whole is then to go to the right about on the left heel, ftepping off with the left foot.

## XXXI. Right hand Platoon, make ready.

## Direction.

Note, This operation is performed in the fame manner as that of the twenty-fixth word of command of this fection, but with this difference, that the platoon is firft to come to the right about, and then cock, lock up, prefent, and fire, as before directed; and on firing, it is again to go to the right about, march, and join the line or the other platoon, who is fill to continue moving on, as it did in advancing; and then to balf-cock, prime and load, \&c.
XXXII. Left
XXXII. Left hand Platoon make ready.

## Direction.

Note, This operation is performed in the fame manner as the lat word of command.

## XXXIII. Halt.

## Direction.

The whole is to fan fart.

## XXXIV. Front.

Direction.
The whole is to come to the right about, and to stand in proper order.

## XXXY. Shoulder your Firelocks.

## Direction:

See the twenty-fixth word of command of the lat lection.
XXXVI. Rear ranks open to whole diffance.

## Direction.

The centre and rear ranks are to go to the right about, upon their left heels.

## XXXVII. March,

## Direction:

The centre rank is to march three paces; and the rear rank fix, each rank ftepping off at the fame time with the left feet; and when, they arrive at their ground, they are to ftand fquare and in proper order.

## XXXVIII. Front.

## Direction.

The two rear ranks are to come to the right about upon their left heels, and to ftand in proper order.

## XXXIX. Support your Arms.

## Direction.

Perform this operation as directed in the firft, fecond, and third motions of the twenty-ninth word of command of the laft fection.

The recruits having been taught the ufe and management of their arms, according to the foregoing directions, they are next to be taken to a butt, where each man is to practife firing with a fingle ball at a mark. The mark to be fhot at is to be placed at the diftance of about fixty yards, and at the height of three feet; and when the men become thus good marksmen, they are then to be again formed as before into three ranks, and to fire together or in platoon. The mark they are now to fire at, is to be a chalk line drawn upon a wall, a little longer than the extent of the rank
intire, and of the fame height with that of the butt, and the men placed at the fame diftance from it, and when they have become expert in this firing alfo, they are then to be fhewn the effect of this fire, with a view, that by knowing their own capacity, they may afterwards have fuch a dependance upon themfelves; as to infpire them with more intrepidity and refolution, whenever they fhall have occafion to face the enemy.

The recruits being thus inftructed and made perfect in each of the above points, the Serjeant is then to dif-. mi/s them; and afterwards to report their condition and capacity to his'commanding officer, in order that they may be re-examined by the Adjutant, and delivered over to him.

CHAP

## C H A P. IV.

> The Duty of the Adjutant.

## Of Arrangements.

AN Arrangement is that difpofition made of a body of men as can beft anfwer the purpofe of attack or defence; and is comprehended under the figure or form of either the line, the column, or the Square. But previous to thofe operations, I fhall give the following Inftructions.

## S е. с т. I. Infiructions.

I. The recruits or foldiers being formed into battalion, or line drawn up in three ranks, or three deep, the Adjutant is to fee thát the ranks be at open order or at whole diftance, and well dreffed, that the files be completed, the men do cover well, and that each man does ftand in his proper order.
II. He is to tell off the battalion into ten platoons or divifions, and to be numbered from right to left. No. I. is to reprefent the divifion of grenadiers on the right, No. II. and III. are to compofe the firft grand divifion, No. IV. and V. are to make the fecond grand divifion, No. VI. and VII. the third grand divifion, No. VIII. and IX. the fourth grand divifion, and No. X. the divifion of grenadiers on the left of the battalion. The five divifions on the right of the centre of the battalion, compofe the right wing; and the five the left make the left wing of the battalion.
III. He is to appoint a Serjeant to command each divifion, befides otherSerjeants to attend and infpect the rear
IV. He is alfo to appoint a guide, to time and direct the feveral motions of the different words of command.
V. He is to direct the men to obferve attentively the divifion and rank they belong to; and alfo their right and left hand men, and their file leaders, to the intent that they may, whenever they are ordered, or fhould at any time be broke, the more readily fall in of themfelves, and draw up in their proper places; and in order to perfect them in fo indifpenfable a point of knowledge and difcipline, he is to take frequent occafion to difperfe and affemble them again.
VI. The above points being fettled, he is then to make the recruits perform that part of the parade and field exercifa, which were taught them by the Serjeant; that he may either report the fate he finds them in to. the commanding officer, or remand them himfelf in cafe of deficience to thie Serjeant again for better inftruction. And on the above exercifes being gone through, and no objection to the performance, he is then to begin with inftructing them himfelf in the following arrangements, and according to the directions laid down for that purpofe.

## S е с т. II. Of the Line.

The line is an uniform rank of men, extending in length according to their nuinber, or to the ground they are to occupy; and this rank either remains fingle, or is ftrengchened or fupported as occafion, requires, by the addition of one or more ranks drawn up parallel to the firft, and a limited diftance from it. And the line being thus formed, the principal operations of which are as follow.

It Rear Ranks clofe to Half Diftance.

## Direction.

This operation is performed as directed in Chap. II. Sect. VI. Art! II. word of command VIII.

2d Battalion by Files, prepare to take other Ground.

## Direction.

The whole is to be in readinefs to face.

Note, The word Battalion fignifies any number of companies or divifions formed and joined together in a line.

3d Battalion by Files, take Ground to the Right.

> Direction.

The whole is to make a full face to the right on the left heel, falling back with the right foot.

## 4th Battalion, March.

## Direction.

The whole is to ftep off with the left foot, being that next the front, and to march by files; always obferving that if a man can fee the fecond or third from him, the file or rank in which he is cannot be ftraight, which he muft endeavour inftantly to rectify.

## 5th Battalion, Halt.

> Direction.

The whole is to ftand faft and in proper order.

6th Battalion, Front.

## Direition.

The whole is to make a full face to the front on the left heel, bringing up the right foot.
$7^{\text {th }}$ Battalion by Files, take Ground to the Left.

## Direction.

The whole is to make a full face to the left, on the left, bringing up the right foot.

> 8th Battalion, March

Direction.

The whole is to ftep off with the right foot, or with that next the front.

$$
9^{\text {th }} \text { Battalion, Halt. }
$$

## Direction.

The whole is to ftand faft, and in proper order.
' oth Battalion, Front.
.Direction.

The whole is to make a full face to the front on the left heel, falling back with the right foot.

This method of marching by files either to the right or to the left, as occafion requires, is ufeful in many. cafes, but more particularly in the three following inftances. Firft, it inftructs us how we may gain, before we come to a clofe engagement with the enemy, either his flank, or prevent his taking that advantage of us, or at the leaft, how we may bring ourfelves into an oppofite direction with him. Next, this method enables us, without the leaft inconvenience, to give or take ground in the line, either for the purpofe of making room for others, or of accommodating ourfelves. And, laftly, it is no lefs ufeful in preventing the bad confequence of having the intervals between the feveral battalions of the line too open or too much clofed.

But as to the application of the above method of marching by files on the long March, I cannot by any means approve or recommend it, becaufe a battalion or body of men unavoidably occupies by that order of march, much more than double the extent of ground it ought to cover, and that arifing from the following circumftances: Firft, when foldiers are on a march, they are frequently obliged to carry their tent poles, and feveral other articles of their camp equipage with them ; and then they find themfelves under a neceffity, for the convenience of carriage, to fling fome of thofe materials upon the ends of thofe poles, which fticking out behind, oblige the men immediately following to keep at a diftance, in order to avoid running their faces againft them. Next, there is the like inconvenience occafioned from the firelocks, which the men often find neceffary to carry level upon their fhoulders, as well for the eafe of carriage in that refpect, as to relieve now and then the hand that fupports the firelock. And, laftly, there is befides, the natural projection of
the body, which every man mut have more or lefs in proportion to the degree of his movement, whether he walks or runs, which will likewife, of itfelf, caufe the files to open. And hence, upon the whole, the reafon why a body of infantry, marching by files, cannot preferve their primitive diftances, and muft therefore occupy an improper extent of ground, and of courfe lengthen the line of march.:

Now, fhould the enemy fuddenly appear upon either fank, and as rapidly make his puifh or attack upon troops in fuch open order, he would find but little difficulty or obftruction to penetrate and put them all to the rout, fince before fufficient time could be had to clofe the files, and to make a proper difpofition, all would be over. And hence arifes a material piece of intelligence, neceffary for a partizan to be made acquainted with, viz. whether the order of march of the enemy is by files, or by rank.

But admitting that no fuch attack was to be apprehended, there is ftill another_difadvantage arifing from too open and extenfive a line of march, very affecting to thofe who are in the rear, which is this: that as they are ever urged by their officers, as often as they open, to regain their proper diftance from the front; the hurry and fatigue they fuffer in endeavouring to effect it, fo weakens and difpirits them, that it is no uncommon thing to obferve, that the rear only of a fingle battalion under this order of march is frequently tired and knocked up, while the van is fcarcely made warm by the march; but as I am foon to treat of the column, I will defer enlarging more on the difadvantage of marching by files, as I fhall there have occafion to renew this fubject again, and offer a remedy for the inconveniencies refulting from it. .

IIth Battalion, prepare to advance.
Direction.
At this precaution the men are to appeai fteady, and to hold themfelves in readinefs to march.
I2th Battalion, March.

Direction.
The men are to ftep off together with their left feet, taking the utmoft care to preferve a ftraight line as they advance.
$13^{\text {th }}$ Battalion, Halt.

Dircction.

The whole is to ftand faft, bringing up the hind foot.

## MILITARY DISCIPLINM. 125

74 th Battalion, prepare to retreat.

Direction.

The whole is to go to the right-about upon the left heel, and then to ftand fquare.

$$
\text { I } 5 \text { th Battalion, March: }
$$

Direction.

The whole is to ftep off, beginning the march with the left foot, and to move flow or quick, as fhall be directed.

## ェ6th Battalion, Halt.

Direction.

The whale is to ftand faft, bringing up the hind foot.

## 17th Battalion, Front.

## Direction.

The whole is to come to the right-about upon the left heel, and to ftand in proper order.

There is no one part of the exercife in which greater nicety and more exactnefs is required, than in the article of marching, whether advancing or retreating, nor yet more neceffary to obferve; for it is not fufficient that a fingle battalion marches ftraight and even in all its parts, with relation to itfelf alone, but it muft preferve the fame order with refpect to all other battalions, advancing together in the fane line with it; the reafon of which is, that by thus obferving an entire ftraight line, each part can on any emergence not only more immediately fuitain the other, but be in a readinefs to attack and cut off that part of the enemy's line, which may, be imprudent enough to be too far advanced before the reft can well move up to fupport it.- And the fame reafon holds good in retreating, as the part neareft the cnemy muft be more expofed, fince thofe who are more remote cannot be in a condition to afford the neceflary fuccour; in fhort, the advantage is fo great in preferving a proper order in marching, that but little more is befides wanting to render thofe troops invincible who obferve it; and as this is fo well known, I would therefore recommend; in order to have foldiers expert and perfect in fo effential an operation, that the battalion be well exercifed in marching by diftinct and feparate divifions, fo that each divifion may reprefent a battalion, and to be

## MILITARY DISCIPLINE. 127

drawn up at the diftance of thirty yards from each other, which is the ordinary interval between battalions in the line, it being the allowance of room requifite for the working of two field pieces.

18th Battalion, by Divifion, half whet to the Right, March.

- Direction.

Each division is to wheel the half of a quadrant upon the right heel of the right hand man of the front rank.

> lgth Divifions, Halt.

## Direction.

The whole is to ftand faff, and in proper order.

## XX. Divifons, as you were, March.

- Direction.

All the divifions are to wheel back together, upon: the fame heel, to their former ground.

## XXI. Battalion, by Divifion, balf-wheel to the Left, March.

## Direction.

Each divifion is to wheel the half of a quadrant upon the left heel of the left-hand man of the front rank.

## XXII. Divifions; Halt.

## Direction.

The whole is to ftand faft.

## XXIII. Divifions, as you were, March.

## Direction.

All the divifions are to, wheel back together, upon the fame left heel, to their former ground.

The intent of the above operations is to inftruct a platoon officer how he is occafionally to give a flankingfire; that is, fhould he find that he out-flanks the enemy; or that he has no enemy directly to oppofe him, or, fhould 'he obferve the enemy advancing, in order to penetrate or force fome contiguous part of his own line or battalion; he is then, on any of thofe occafions or fuch like inftances, to wheel his divifion or platoon accordingly, and throw in his flank-ing-fire. But the officer in wheeling his divifion muft attend minutely to one effential circumftance, which
is, that he wheels juft fo much as to bring the object at which he is to fire to be directly oppofite to himfelf; or that it may ftand at right angles with the front of his platoon; by which means he will obtain the advantage of a direct fire, which is by much of greater weight and more certain than any that be given in an oblique direction; for let it be obferved, that men in general will naturally, on any fudden occafion, fire directly before them; nor can they well be brought to fire obliquely, except they are, with great care, previoufly prepared for it; and even then, none but thofe who are drawn $u p$ in a fingle rank can conveniently do it with any tolerable effect ; but at exercife or on fervice, the divifions then are not to wheel all at once to the right or to the left, as above directed, but each is to wheel and fire in an alternate fucceffion, left the external flank of one divifion fhould by chance be placed in the line of the other's fire, which is a point that troops muft always be inftructed to avoid and to guard againft, and therefore the preparative for this arrangement is only to fay, battalion, take care to perform your flank-firing; and on the fignal or word of command being in confequence given, each divifion is to wheel and fire alternately as above directed.
XXIV. Battalion, prepare to open at the Centre.

## Direction.

The four centre divifions, viz. fourth, fifth, fixth, and feventh, or the fecond and third grand divifions
(fee the annexed figure) are to go to the right about ; by which means their rear that was will now become their prefent front.

## XXV. Battalion, open at the Centre, March.

## Dire Tion.

The two fecond grand divifions on the right of the centre of the battalion, and now faced to the right about, is to wheel to the left, upon the left heel of the left hand man of their prefent front rank, and the third grand divifion, which is on the left of the centre, is to wheel alfo to the right, upon the right heel of the right hand man of the fame rank.

## XXVI. Divifions, Halt.

## Direction.

The whole is to ftand faft.
XXVII. Divifions, cover your Flanks by the Battalion, March.

## Direction.

The two centre grand divifions that wheeled, yiz. the fecond and third, are to march forward four paces, which will bring the original front or the prefent rear of each, in a line with the inward three files of the contiguous grand divifions of the battalion that frand fait.
XXVIII.
XXVỊI. Divifons to the Right About.
Each of thefe two grand divifions is to come to the right-about, and ftand in proper or-reand the figures fhewing the that compofe the battalion.


The above arrangement is in a great meafure intended for thofe battalions which compofe the fecond line, and is calculated for the following purpofes: Either that it may afford a commodious interval for cavalry occafionally to pafs through: Or, that it may ferve as a fafe retreat, on any preffing emergence, for the oppofite battalion of the firft line; for which laft purpofe it effectually provides, fince thofe who are appointed to defend that pafs or interval are drawn up' with a full front on each fide, to reftrain and ftop the purfuit of the enemy. And here it may be obferved, that thofe principal points are obtained without fuffering the leaft inconvenience, as this difpofition neither incumbers the battalion, nor in any wife affects the activity of it; which I much doubt could not be fo well accomplifhed, were the divifions to be doubled according to the prefent method. There is befides another very confiderable ufe which may be made of this arrangement, and of which the great Marfhal $T_{u} u-$ renne had availed himfelf on various occafions. I mean the advantage it affords in making a commodious and fecure retreat; by the oppofite battalions in the firf and fecond lines alternately retreating through and protecting each other.

## XXIX. Battalion, prepare to advance in your. open Order. Direction.

Thofe grand divifiens which opened the battalion are to face thus: Th it of the right wing is to face to the right upon the left heel; and that of the left is to face to the left tupon the right heel; after which they are, when ordered, to march by files, ftepping off with the feet next the interval.

## XXX. Battalion, March.

## Direction.

The whole is to ftep off together.

## XXXI. Battalion, Halt.

## Direction.

The whole is to ftand faft, and in proper order:

## XXXII. Battalion, prepare to clofe at the Centre.

## Direction.

The grand divifion of the right wing is to face to the left upon the left heel; and the grand divifion of the left wing is to face to the right upon the right heel.
XXXIII. Battalion, clofe at the Centre, March. Dircction.

The grand divifion on the right is to wheel to the right, on the right heel cf the front rank man, and that on the left is at the fame time to wheel to the left, on the left heel of him of the fame rank, like two folding doors, fhutting in and clofing each other at the centre.

## XXXIV. Grand Divifions that clofed, drefs.

## Direction.

Thefe grand divifions that wheeled in are to march forward four paces, which will bring them to their former ground in a line with the reft of the battalion, and then halt.
Of Hedge Firing.

As this firing is an operation which cannot be well introduced into the ordinary exercife, on account of the length of time neceffary to make the proper difpofition ; I therefore imagine that a defcription alone of the nature of it, with a direction how to perform and practice it at other times, will of itfelf prove a fufficient inftruction.

Hedge-

Hedge-firing then is only applicable when troops happen to be drawn up oppofite to one another, and behind parallel fences, fuch as low walls, banks, hedges, Sc. where, by the interruption of which.they cannot approach nearer to each other; now when troops are fo pofted, it is evident that the fire from the front rank which knecls cannot have a proper effect, becaufe the fence before them obftructs their view of the enemy. This being the cafe, the men are therefore to be drawn up two deep, which will of courfe either make their ranks more extenfive, or will procure them a referve occafionally to fuftain them. In order then to the firft, let an interval be made between each divifion or company of the battalion equal to half the extent of that divifion, taking care, at the fame time, to make a fufficient allowance for the interval of the platoon officer; then fubdivide the rear rank, and face it to the left, ordering the lefft half to march and join the left of the front rank, and the right half that of the centre rank.

By this difpofition the battalion will be extended a third more, and the whole will be drawn up two deep; and in that order both ranks are to fire ftanding; the front rank to fire as centre rank, and the old centre as rear rank.

> Of Parapet Firing.

This firing, like that of hedge firing, cannot be introduced conveniently at the time of the common exercife, as well on account of the length of time neceffary to be taken up in the performance of it, as the
want of exhibiting the different fort of works it is calculated to defend; and therefore I fhall here, as in the laft arrangement, only give a defcription of it, with a direction how it is to be performed.

This arrangement is one of thofe operations which is intended only for defence; and therefore, the method requifite for that difpofition depends as well upon the nature of the parapet over which the men are to fire, as upon that of the attack made to poffefs it.

There are commonly two forts of parapets or breaftworks erected; one with, and the other without a ditch. The firft is that which is erected upon the ramparts of a fortified place, or that which forms lines to an army, thrown up in the field, \&c. The laft is that which conftitutes the covert-way of a fortrefs, made to flope gradually from the top of it into the field, to the diftance of twenty or thirty yards, called the glacis. The height of moft parapets is between fix and feven feet; and to them is added at the foot, or bottom of each, another work, which is called a banquette or foot-bank, whofe height is about two feet, and whofe breadeh is about three. The defign of which is evidently for a rank only of foldiers to mount and fand upon, in order to fire over the top of the parapet. As to the parapet made with or covered by a ditch, that work is not fo liable to immediate affault; and therefore the troops, which are appointed to defend it, have the more time to make their difpofitions, and to perform their operations; whereas the parapet of a covert-way, as having no ditch, is ever expofed to immediate affialt, and therefore requires a different method of defence.

Now in order to have a clearer idea of the defence requifite to make in either inftance, it will be neceffary to reprefent the different mode of attack on each, and to fubjoin refpectively a fcheme of defence, meaning only fuch as relates to the mulketry.

Firft then of the parapet with a ditch, which I fuppofe is attacked, either by making a breach in it, by filling up the ditch with fafcines, or with fome other materials, or by planting fcaling ladders to get over it. Hence it is evident in either inftance, that which ever of thefe methods the troops take which are to make the attack, they cannot proceed fo expeditioufly and uniformly, as if no fuch.impediment had at all been in their way, therefore whatever difficulty or delay which that interruption occafions, muft of courfe be of fervice to thofe who are to defend, as well in point of time, as in the opportunity it gives them to difpofe of themfelves to the beft advantage, and to eftablifh regularity in their proceedings. The defence then neceffary to make againft fuch an attack, and the operations proper to obferve, are as follow : The battalion, in the firft place, is to be drawn up on the rampart, or upon the terre-plain of the place attacked, and faced to the parapet, and each rank directed to fire only as rear rank men. This being premifed, the front rank is ordered to make'ready, and to mount the banquette, and to direct their fire to fuch place or quarter as is pointed out to them by their officer ; and to fire not by word of command, but as each man fhall of himfelf take his aim: the front rank having in confequence fired, the men of which are to ftep down immediately off the banquette, bringing their firelocks to he pofition of a recover, and then to face to the right,
and to march quickly off, through their officer's interval, and draw up in theif proper order in the rear of the rear rank of their refpective divifion, where they are to half cock, prime, and load. On the front rank having fircd, the centre rank is to make ready, and to move up and take the place of the former as foon as it has marched clear off; and fo on in rotation with refpect to each rank, the fucceeding rank always moving up and fupplying the place of the preceding one.

With refpect to the attack of the covert way, there are two ways of making it, the one by regular approaches, and the other by immediate affault. As to the firft, it is effected at the time when the befiegers have finifhed their laft parallel, which always runs clofe to the foot of the glacis, or at the diftance of about twenty yards from the faliant angles. Then when matters are all prepared and ready, thiey firft begin by throwing a fhower of live fhells into the place they intend to attack, in order to difcompofe and terrify thofe who are to defend it; and after thofe fhells have burfted, they then throw another flight, and perhaps of dead fhells, having only burning furzes in them, of which the men in the covert way being fgnorant, and believing they will alfo burft like the former, they of courfe lie down to fhelter themfelves from the fplinters; and then the befiegers, under favour of which device, rufh out of their works at the fame time; hoping to find thofe who are to defend, either fo intimidated by the fhells as to be off their guard, or in their fire fo precipitate, as ineffectually to throw it away at too great a diftance on the firft appearance of thofe who begin the attack; and on this prefump-
tion, they build their hopes of making an eafy and fafe lodgement. Indeed it muft be acknowledged, that their confidence is feldom deftitute of fuccefs, except the greateft firmnefs and alertnefs is preferved by thofe who are to defend; and where that can be obferved and maintained, then on the other hand, a moft dreadful carnage enfues, with a certain repulfe.

As to the other method of attacking the covert way by immediate affault, it is undertaken without any vifible preparation, or rather by furprize; and this attack is commonly conducted under favour of the night or of a thick fos; and the fuccefs of which is likewife founded on a prefumption of remiffnefs, or precipitation in thofe who are to defend.

Having now fhown the different methods which are practifed in the attack of the covert way, that of its defence will be founded upon duly confidering the principles of the attack, and thence to deduce the means to defeat and counteract it. In order to which, it will be neceffary to recapitulate the former principles, that a more diftinct view may be had of them, and that the fcheme which I fhall offer may be the better comprehended and explained.

Firft, The probability of remiffnefs or precipitation in thofe who are to defend.

Secondly, The diftance from the place of attack being very fmall, renders it impoffible for thofe who are to defend to have time fufficient, after having once fired, to load again, before the enemy will come up. and make a clofe attack.

And

And laftly, as the front rank of him who defends can only fire at the fame time, the difficulty, or almoft the impoffibility, for the centre rank, or a frefh body of men, to fupply betimes its place and fire in turn, before the enemy will be up and ready to charge.

The above being the principal points upon which the enemy depend for fuccefs, the method which I fhall offer to fruftrate fuch their views will be as follows:
ift. That cartridges be provided for the occafion, making each cartridge to contain eight quarter ounce balls, with the ufual quantity of powder.

This hint I have taken from the French themfelves; whofe cartridges I obferved were made up with one mufket ball and two piftol balls in each. To try the efficacy of which, I made juft fuch another cartridge myfelf, and fired it at a mark about fixty yards diftance, which I found had fufficient force with it, but as the fhot were unequal, they fpread themfelves too much, which I difliked; I therefore made up another cartridge of nearly the fame weight of fhot as the other, which confifted of the number and fpecies of ball as I above recomnend, and alfo fired it; and I faw it had not only a proper force, but they fpread themfelves into the compafs of about three feet and an half. diameter, being confiderably lefs than the former and more certain, therefore I preferred it, as well on that account, as for its containing a greater number of fhot. Now as the object intended to be fired at fhould not be at half the above diftance, and as the time of advancing will be in proportion to the length of the
way, therefore the neceffity in this particular, to increafe the quantity of fhot, in order to compenfate for the want of time to load again, or to change fituation with thofe who are loaded, fince nothing elfe can be found more effectual to ftop the progrefs of the enemy than fo great a weight of fire.

2 dly , That the moft cool, refolute, and beft marksmen be picked out to compofe the front rank, who are to be pofted upon the banquette. That no fire whatever be given before the enemy is within the diftance of ten or twelve yards of the top of the parapet. And in order to render the fire more certain and effectual, that the front rank be ordered to lay their firelocks upon the 'top of the parapet, that it may ferve as a refting place to take a more fure and fteady aim : that the men be directed not to take aim above knee high, and for the two following reafons: firft, becaufe thofe who lead the attack have their bodies commonly covered by cuiraffes; and laftly, that the fhot which mifs difabling thofe in front, may take the thighs or bodies of thofe in the rear, fince the flope of the glacis will of courfe place them lower than thofe before them.

3 dly , That if there be fufficient fpare firelocks in the place, that one of which be given loaded to each front rank man, and placed clofe by him, to ufe inftantly upon any rapid pufh of the enemy, after he has fired his own firelock. But fhould there be no fuch fpare arms, then the fire is to be kept up as follows:

When the man of the front rank has fired, he is inftantly to hand his firelock to him of the centre rank in
the fame file, and take his back in the room of it ; and then he of the centre rank is likewife to give that empty firelock which he received to him in the rear to load, and take back his in return, ready to give upon occafion to him in the front rank, by which means the front rank man can fire, at the leaft, three rounds in a florter face of time than the enemy can advance; but if the two firft fires are well timed and given, there will probably be time enough afterwards for him of the rear rank to load the empty firelocks, before there will be occafion for a third fire, as the confufion and carnage among the enemy will prove fo dreadful and diftracting, as to prevent for fome time their acting with order and fpirit, or their returning foon after to the charge. But fhould the enemy, neverthelefs, prefs vigoroufly on over their dead and wounded, and before the empty firelocks are loaded; the front ranks are then to rely on their bayonets, which will be found very powerful when the enemy thall appear upon the top of the parapet, while the rear rank goes on with the loading, and fixes over the heads of thofe in the front to fuftain them. In fhort, were thofe who are to defend but to underftand their own advantage, and to act with temper on the occafion, they would find themfelves able to baffle almoft any attack that flould be made on them.

4thly, That as the faliant angle is the moft expofed and neareft to the enemy, it is therefore not only the fooneft but the moft fuccefsfully attacked, by the great facility there is of embracing the angle on each fide. To prevent the enemy then from availing himfelf of that advantage, thofe pofted there, muft firft be informed, by whom and how they are to be fuftained
and defended, that they may on occafion behave with greater vigour and refolution ; and that thofe who are appointed to fuftain them, be pofted on each fide of the re-entering angle, in order to fcour the faces of the angle attacked; which difpofition will expofe the enemy to the fury of a front and flank fire, and if well conducted will make a repulfe a matter of little difficulty.

5 thly, That as foon as the battalion is pofted in the works, the whole bé immediately exercifed in the foregoing points. That their different defences be carefully explained to them ; and that they be informed at the fame time, how they are reciprocally to fuftain each other, and how much their honour and fafety will depend upon their coolnefs and refolution. In fhort, nothing muft be omitted which can inftruct and invigorate the men.

6thly, and laftly, That careful and intelligent videts be appointed and pofted at proper diftances and places upon the glacis, in order to give timely notice of the approaches of the enemy. That thofe videts be inftructed to watch particularly the motions of the enemy after their flight of fhells, taking it as a certain indication, that fhould they then appear, the fhells which had been laft fired, were not live ones, but dead ones, and from which there is nothing to apprehend, and in confequence, notice accordingly is inftantly to be given; for were the fhells live ones the enemy would not appear, left they fhould themfelyes be expofed to the fplinters of them; and therefore they would for their own fakes keep clofe in their trenches and avoid that danger.

In the above article of parapet-firing, 1 have been the more diftinct and explicit, it being fo effential 2 part. of difcipline for a foldier to be well inftructed in, feeing, that moft if not all of the rules, which have been delivercd on that head, were rather fpeculative than practical, and calculated more for parade forms than different exigencies.

## Of the rejoicing Fire.

The rejoicing fire is ufed on obtaining a victory, or on celebrating fome public feftival. The performance of which is very fimple in itfelf and eafily learned; it is therefore feldom practifed but on fuch like occafions a direction alone being thought fufficient for the purpofe.

There are, however, two forts of rejoicing fires; the one by a volley, and the other by a running fire from right to left of the battalion. On the battalion being informed what fort of rejoicing fire is to be performed, the ranks are firft to be clofed to balf diftance; the men are then to prime and load; the front rank is not to kneel ; each rank is to fire as rear rank men only ; and the whole is to prefent in the air. Then, if a volley is to be fired, the whole battalion is to fire together, either by fignal or by word of command. But fhould a running fire be made, it is to be performed from right to left in the fucceffion of files; that is, the men of the firft file on the right of the battalion are, on the word, begin, to pull their triggers; and then, as foon as thofe of the fecond file obferve the flafh in the pans of the firft, they are

## MILITARY DISCIPL'INE. 145

alfo to pull their triggers; and fo on from one file to another, till the fire ends with the left hand file of the battalion.

## S e c т. III. Of the Column.

The Column is a folid figure, comprehending four right angles, and whofe oppofite fides are equal to each other. This figure reprefents a parallelogram, the two fhorteft fides are termed, one the head, and the other the foot of the Column, or the front and rear of it; and the longeft fides are called the flanks. But this form is not always obferved or regarded, for fometimes the Column is broader than it is deep or long, and fometimes approaching to a fquare, juft as the perfon in command will judge neceffary to determine; but in which ever of the above forms the Column is conftructed, the terms of its fides are immutable; for the fide which leads is called the front, its oppofite the rear, and its other fides the flanks.

The ufe of the Column is, either to form a line of march, to attack a pafs, retrenchment, or a breach made in the works of a fortified place; and therefore the head, front or breadth of the Column is made more or lefs extenfive in proportion to the fervice for which it is defigned.

There are two forts of columns, one is compofed of files, and the other of ranks. That which is formed of files, is nothing more but a battalion or a body of men drawn up three deep; and then faced either to the right or left," and marched in that order; but fhould this breadth be deemed not fufficiently extenfive, then to it is added more troops formed in the fame manner, to make out the breadth or front T required.
required. With refpect to the Column made up of ranks, it is formed from a battalion or a body of men drawn up alfo three deep; and then that body of men is told off into divifions, each divifion being of the fame extent of the intended head or front of the Column; and thofe divifions are afterwards wheeled or placed in the fucceffion of each other from fronttorear.

Each of thefe two forts of columns has its particular advocates in point of choice; fome preferring that compofed of files, while others efteem that which is formed of ranks. Were thefe different opinions limited to particular and not general ufes, each might occafionally be adopted, and an advantage be obtained from it ; but to fay that either Column is fit for all purpofes, I muft condemn the affertion; fince it will appear, upon a little reflection, that the fort of Column, which is neceffary for one kind of fervice, will be found inconvenient or improper on a different occafion; and by the want of making this juft diftinction, and by the parties confining themfelves to general and not to particular points, each becomes a bigot to his own opinion, and in confequence irreconcileable to any other. To remove then a prejudice fo ill founded, I hall firft endeavour to fhew the power and force of the Column itfelf, that a juft idea may be had of its importance; and next, how in confequence to apply it, under either form, fuitable to the occafion, that it may in its operation produce the better effect.

The Column then, befides the definition already given of it, is a large, clofe, heavy, compacted body. Its fuccefs chiefly depends upon the impetuofity of its progrefs in its folid form ; the weight and force of which being fo great, when thus put in motion, that
no acceffible line of men, retrenchment or barricade, of equal extent to its breadth can refift it, but like a torrent bears down all before it. And though the head of it may fuffer much from the fire of fuch line, retrenchinent or barricade, yet by its continually advancing and preffing on, and frefh men ftill prefenting themfelves to fupply the places of the dead and wounded, it muft at length arrive at the point of attack, before thofe who defend can poffibly be prepared and ready to receive it afrefh; and then of courfe a rout enfues, through a fenfe that the means of a repulfe is no longer in their power.

On the other hand, the Column is alfo to be confidered from the nature of its conftruction, as a body extremely unwieldy in itfelf, not only requiring much time and fpace for the operation of its evolutions, either to reduce or to alter its form, but liable befides from the leaft violent impreffion made upon it, to be involved in great diforder and confufion, by the parts being then broke and disjointed, and not fo eafily again put into order. It is a body that likewife requires the greatef equability and regularity in its movement and progrefs, otherwife it will unavoidably open, which muft of courfe extend its rear beyond a proper diftance, and by that means enfeeble its flanks, and expofe it to total deftruction from any fudden attack made at the time upon it. And though it is a body irrefiftible in iffelf by any line of equal extent to its front, yet it muft ever be remembered how much that advantage diminifhes in proportion as that line increafes, or is more extenfive than the front of the Column. And for inftance,

Suppofe two battalions of an equal force, and of a like eftablifhment, oppofe each other. The one forms
the Line and the other the Column. That of the line is told off into eight divifions or platoons; and that of the other into four divifions, formed into a Column either of ranks or of files; and that the attack of which is made on the centre of the oppofite battalion, whofe two centre divifions are, I thall fuppofe, of equal extent to the head of the Column. Now it is evident that this Column will not only be expofed in its progrefs to a direct fire from the two centre divifions, but allo to the flanking crofs fire of the three other divifions belonging to each wing of the line; and as thofe, who give thefe three flanking fires on each fide, will have nothing to apprehend from the immediate attack of the Column to flurry or difcompofe them, therefore their fire will have the moft certain effect, being delivered both with coolnefs and regularity; and though the furviving part of the Column fhould neverthelefs ftill prefs on, the line will then have nothing more to do, but to open to the right and left at the centre, and to fuffer the head of the Column juft to pafs through, and then for each wing to clofe in immediately upon it, and to charge it in flank with fixed bayonets before it can have time to recover itfelf from the difordered condition it muft hate confequently been thrown into by fuch a powerful weight of fire upon it, and then inevitable deftruction will as quickly follow.

Hence appears the neceffity for examining, and weighing well beforehand, what flanking force there is to oppofe the Column in its progrefs; and where that is found to be too great for an open attack, then recourfe muft be had to ftratagem; that is, where a real attack can be concealed and made by furprife, or where a variety of feints can be introduced remote from the true attack, which may divert the attention of
thofe who defend fuch feints, then the Column will have its due weight, and will feldom or never mifcarry.

Having thus fhewn the power and force of the Column, I fhall next reprefent what fort of Column will be neceffary to apply under different circumftances, which I fhall endeavour to examplify by the following cafes.

Cafe I. Suppofe a retrenchment is to be attacked, and that from a neglect, or from the nature of the ground on the other fide of it, no referve of troops are there pofted to meet and dttack the head of the column on its forcing that retrenchment; and confequently all that is to be apprehended, is the attack of thofe on each fide to take the Column in flank.

Conformable to this cafe, I would make choice of the Column compofed of files, becaufe, after it has penetrated, it can, on facing to the right and left outwards from the centre, inftantly move forwards, either to charge thofe in flank, who may have ftill remained behind their works, and difperfe them, or to oppofe a front to thofe who, more remote, may there have formed a line parallel to the fhaft of the Column.

Cafe II. Suppofe a barricade or retrenchment is to be attacked, and that the enemy forms his line behind it at fome convenient diftance, in order to fuftain that work, and to attack the head of the Column as it advances; and that the Column on its part has nothing to apprehend for its flanks, knowing the nature and fituation of fuch works, which cannot admit of a flanking force fufficient to annoy or impede it in its progrefs,

Under

Under the circumftances of this cafe, I fhould prefer the Column compofed of ranks, becaufe the rear divifions of which can by facing to the right and left outwards, eafily after join the leading divifion of the Column, and fo form the line; which a Column of files cannot conveniently, or fo expeditioufly do, on account of the large fweep which the feveral parts muft take in wheeling to accomplifh that operation, befides the rifk of being thrown into diforder by fuch an attempt.

Note, This Column I would likewife prefer for the purpofe of forming the line on coming out of a pafs or ftrait, where no flanking force is apprehended to oppofe me.

Cafe III. Suppofe a retrenchment is to be attacked, and that it is forefeen the enemy will, in order to fupport it, not only form a line to attack the head of the Column, but will likewife form a line on each fide to attack the Column in flank.

In this fituation I fhould make choice of what I call the mixed Column; that is, I would have the centre part of the Column formed of ranks, and each flank of files, in order that fuch Column may anfwer the united purpofes of the two laft cafes, both for front and flank attacks as is here required.

Cafe IV. Suppofe you are to meet the enemy in a ftreet, road, or fuch like fituation, where you and he are equally alike inclofed in fuch pafs, and that neither of you can attack each other's flank.

In this cafe I fhould prefer the Column formed of ranks; becaufe, as moft, if not all roads, ftreets, \&c.

## MILITARY DISCIPLINE. 15x

are feldom of an equal breadth in all parts, this Column can, from its conftruction, eafily contract itfelf by doubling its ranks, or again unfold itfelf to its former breadth, as the occafion requires, which operation a Column of files cannot effect. And as to the method of attack, which I would venture to direct in this fituation, it fhould be, inftead of making ufe of that abfurd form of freet fire which is now practifed, to have the ranks to extend to the full breadth of fuch pafs, with directions, on no account to fire before ordered, but to make ufe of the bayonet, and decide the affair by manly vigour. The advantages of which method are thefe, firft, the enemy cannot get in upon either of your flanks to diforder you, the whole fpace being filled up. And next, as the enemy will be ignorant of your defign to referve your fire, and to depend folely upon your bayonet, he will moft probably give his fire on your advancing, which as furely as he does, he is inevitably loft; there being, I may venture to affirm, not an inftance, to be produced, where foldiers have imprudently thrown away their fire, and not finding the effect which they hoped to receive from it, did not, on being inftantly after clofe pufhed, think themfelves incapable of all further refiftance, and in confequence turn round on thofe in their rear to feek flight that way; and by the panic they communicate, throw all into confufion and diforder. The only danger attending an attack of this fort is, the rifk you run of your men giving their fire firft, and then the -tables may be eafily turned upon yourfelf, which to guard againft, I would recommend that the front ranks be not permitted to load, which, inftead of leffening their courage, will ferve to increafe their vigour in the attack, knowing their bayonet is to be
their only dependance, together with the certain fpirit that an advancing motion will ever excite; but this difpofition is a circumftance which nuift be, to the moment it is carried into execution, kept a profound fecret from the enemy, left his knowledge of it fhould ferve to invigorate his defence, and make your own efforts the weaker. And befides the above direction, that thofe immediately in the rear of the front ranks be ordered on receiving the enemy's fire, to rufh inftantly on over the dead and wounded, and charge the enemy alone with their bayonets, and not to fire but where perfonal refiftance is offered, and then to purfue the blow, and conqueft will as rapidly follow.

I have faid above, "That abfurd form of freet fire;" and abfurd I muft beg leave to call it, and for the following reafons. In our prefent difcipline we practife two methods of freet firing;" the one is, by making the divifion that has fired, to wheel afterwards by half, ranks to the right and left outwards from the centre, and to march in that order by half-divifions down the flanks on eacli fide of the Column, and to draw up in the rear, and there go on with their priming and loading. The other method is, to make the divifion, on having fired, to face to the right and left outwards from the centre, and one half rank to follow the other; and in that order to march in one entire file down on each fide of the Column into the rear, and there draw up as before.

Now by the firft method it is evident, that you muft, at the very leaft, have a front of ground double the extent of your rank ; otherwife, the divifion that fires cannot wheel out and march into the rear, in the order preícribed; confequently, by the advantage the enemy will poffefs in having a front double in extent

## MILITARYDISCIPLINE.

to your's, it will enable him, not only to return your attack with a front of equal force, but to attack you at the fame time on each flank with a quarter force more, befides the further advantage you neceffarily give him by the time which you muft unavoidably fpend in the wheeling out of your half ranks, in order to clear your front for the fucceeding divifion to come up and fire in turn; which are circumftances in themfelves fufficient to afford an opportunity to an enemy to deftroy any column that will make ufe of fuch a firing.

And as to the other method of ftreet firing, though you increafe by it the extent of your ranks, and confequently the weight of your fire; yet it is no lefs certain, that what is thus gained in rank or front is more than loft in time, by fill the more tedious form of making the half ranks to face to the right and left outwards, and to follow each other into the rear, which is an opportunity that a fagacious fpirited enemy will not fail to improve, and take advantage of to your total deftruction.

Hence it appears, how neceffary it is to difcover the fort of difcipline practifed by the enemy, and by knowing its defects you will be enabled to make a provifion accordingly, and to turn them to your future advantage.

The above being my reafons for condemning the Areet-fire, I fhall take no further notice of it in the following work, but proceed to thofe points which I judge to be more effential in themfelves.
I. Battalion, advance your Firelocks.

## Direction.

See word of command I. Sect. III. Chap. III.

## II. Battalion, by Files, prepare to form the Column at the Centre.

Direction.
The battalion having been told off into ten divifions; and numbered from right to left, and nominated as directed in Sect. I. Infraction II. of this Chapter ; then all thole divifions of the right wing are to face inwards to the left, as are thole of the left wing to the right, excepting the three inward files of the fecond and third grand divifions on each fade of the centre of the betalion, which are to ftand fat, and be the leading files of their refpective grand divifions.

## III. Battalion, form the Column. March.

## Direction.

The whole battalion is to ftep off together. The leading files at the centre of the battalion are to march Straight forward, and as foo as the other files of the fame grand divifions come up to the ground from whence the leading files had marched, they are fucceffively to wheel and follow their leaders in a direct line. The inward fingle files of the firft and fourth grand divirions are, at the fame time, to make an half wheel to the front, and to march out, and lead in an oblique direction
direction their refpective grand divifions, to join the two centre grand divifions, fo as that the whole may form in an even and parallel direction with each other. And as to the firft and tenth divifions, reprefenting the grenadiers on the flanks of the battalion, their inward fingle files are likewife to make an half wheel to the front, and to lead their refpective divifions to the head of the Column where they are to join each other in the front, not by files, as the other parts of the battalion have done, but by ranks, and at the diftance of about twenty paces advanced.

The reafon for making the grenadiers form by ranks at the head of the column is this; that by their making a greater front than the column itfelf, they may fo much the more cover the flanks of it from the oppofite fire of the enemy, and that by their embracing a greater extent of the enemy's front, they may the better divert his fire from the column; by which means when the column comes to arrive at the point of attack, as it will fuffer lefs to weaken and diforder it, it mult of courfe be more vigorous and regular in its affault.

## IV. Column. Halt.

## Direction.

The whole is to ftand faft.
The reafon of this halt is to fee that the whole is completely formed, and in proper order to advance.

## V. Column, advance to the Charge.

## Direction.

The whole is to ftep off together, beginning the march with the left foot, and to preferve throughout an equal meafure and the fame pace, otherwife the column will unavoidably open, and the rear will of courfe extend itfelf beyond iss proper diftance from the front, and confequently will diminifh its weight and weaken its efforts, and therefore as there is no one operation in difcipline which requires more a greater equability of motion in its progrefs than this one, I would have the column always to advance or retreat, either by mufic or by fome other found, which can minutely point out the time of the ftep.

The column having pierced the enemy's line or works, the following words of command are to be given, in order to maintain the ground fo acquired, and to difperfe afterwards fuch of the enemy as may attempt to attack the column.

## VI. Column: Halt.

Direction.
The whole is to ftand faft, and inftantly to clofe up to proper diftance:

# MILITARY DISCIPLINE. 

## VII. Column, face to Flank Attack.

## Dircetion.

The two grand divifions on the right of the centre are to face to the right, as are thofe on the left to the left, and the grenadiers are to remain, as before, faced to the front.

## VIII. Flank Divifions, March and Charge.

## Direction.

The two flank grand divifions are to march ftraight forward, but the two centre grand divifions are to ftand faft back to back, in order to advance occafionally to fuftain the others.

Note. This operation will be explained better farther on.

> IX. Flank Divifions. Halt.

## Direftion.

They are to ftand faft,
X. Battalion, prepare to retieat by Columns.

## Direction.

The two flank divifions are to go to the right about, and to march, and join, as before, the two centre divifions; which being effected, the whole with the grenadiers are then to face to the rear.
XI. Column.

## XI. Column. Retreat.

## Direction.

The whole is to ftep off, beginning the march with the left foot.

Note, For as much as it was indifpenfably neceffary for the Column to obferve great order in advancing, fo much is it more incumbent now in retreating; this being the only critical moment for the enemy, if he has any cavalry at all, to attack the column in flank, and therefore the greateft and niceft regularity is to be maintained in its prefent movement. And under this order of march, fhould it be attacked, it will then have nothing more to do, but to halt and face outward from the centre, and keep clofe back to back, but the rear files, which now lead the retreat of the column, are not, fo far as three deep, to face outward with the reft, but to remain faced to the rear; by which means the column will then, on the grenadiers clofing in at the fame time to the column, and coming to the right about, form a perfect front to each of its four fides. Why I would thus have the grenadiers fill to remain at the head of the column, inftead of letting one divifion of them to lead the retreat is, that by their conjoint weight they may the better repel the enemy, who will not fail on this occafion to make a vigorous fally and pufh in purfuit of the column.

# MILITARYDISCIPLINE 

## XII. Column. Halt.

## Direftion.

The whole is to ftand faft, and clofe up.

## XIII. Column, prepare to form the Line.

## Direction.

The divifion of grenadiers on the right wing is to face outward to the left, as is that of the left wing to the right. The files which lead the retreat of the feveral grand divifions are to wheel to the right and left outwards from the centre of the column ; that is, thofe leading files of the firft and fecond grand divifions are to wheel to the left, as are thofe of the third and fourth grand divifions to the right, in order to lead their refpective grand divifions to their proper ground in the line.

## XIV. Column, form the Line. March.

## Direction.

The whole is to ftep off. The grenadiers of each wing are to follow their file leaders, and to march in an oblique direction to the ground, which they are to occupy in the line. The file leaders of the firtt and fourth grand divifions are to march ftraight forward to their ground, making the line of their direction to ftand at right angles with the fhaft of the column; and as foon as the laft file of each of the above grand
divifions has wheeled, in order to follow in line their refpective file leaders, then the file leaders of the fecond and third grand divifions, are likewife to fall in and follow, leading alfo their refpective divifions, excepting thofe files which had led the advance; thefe are not now to wheel and follow, as the others did, but only to move up to their ground in the line, and ftand faft.

## XV. Battalion. Halt.

## Direction.

The whole is to ftand faft.

## XVI. Battalion, face to the Front.

## Direction.

The whole is to face accordingly, and drefs.
XVII. Battalion, by Ranks, prepare to form the Column at the Centre.

## Direction.

The whole Battalion is to face inwards, as directed in the fecond word of Command, excepting the divifions numbered 5 and 6 at the centre, which are to ftand faft, and to be the leading divifions of thofe of their refpective wings.
XVIII. Battalion, form the Column. March.

## Dirccion.

The leading divifions of the column, number 5 and

## MILITARY DISCIPLINE. 162 .

6. are to march ftraight forward ; then number 4 and 7 are to move on till they come to join each other, when they are to face to the front and follow their leaders; and fo on for number 3 and 8 , and number 2 and 9 ; and on the Column being thus formed, which will, in appearance, make four grand divifions following each other, then thole feveral divifions are to move up to each other, and march in a clofe and compact order; but number 1 and 10 , the grenadiers, are to march in an oblique direction, and join one another at the head of the Column, as directed in the third word of com-, mand.

## XIX. Column. Halt.

## Direction.

See the four th word of command.
XX. Column, advance to the Charge.

Direction.
See the fifth word of command.

## XXI. Column. Halt.

Direction.

- See the fixth word of command.
XXII. Column; form to Front-attack.


## Direction.

The divifions, numbered 4 and 7 , are to face to the right and left outwards from their point of june-
tion, and march directly forward; and when the have gained a diftance, equal to the extent of their refpective divifions, then they are to face to the front, and join number 5 and 6 , on each fide, as before in the line. On number 4 and 7 having marched clear from the rear of number 5 and 6 , then number 3 and 8 are to move up to that ground, and likewife face to the right and left outwards, and march and draw up in the line, as number 4 and 7 had juft done before them ; and $f 0$ on with refpect to number 2 and 9 , till the line is formed as at firft. The grenadiers, number 1 and 10 , are at the fame time to face outwards from sheir centre, and draw up on the flanks of the battalion.

## XXIII. Battalion, make ready and fire.,

## Direction.

The firing to be obferved on this occafion is to be the alternate fire, from centre to flanks, and performed as follows. The grenadiers, who cover the Column, are firft to fire alternately, and then to face, as above, to the right and left outwards, and on their march to cover the flanks of the Battalion ; they are to go on with their priming and loading, and as foon as they have fircd, and in confequence moved off, the the firing of the Battalion is to begin from centre to ftanks, each divifion firing in fucceffion as it draws up.

## XXIV. Battalion, retreat by Column.

## Direction.

The grenadiers on the right and left are to face outwards, and referve their fire, which is not to be given
giver but on the moft preffing occafion; then the other divifions are to fire alternately from flanks to centre, and on each having fired, it is immediately to go to the right about, and march forward three paces, and then to face inwards to the centre of the Battalion, and march clofe in the rear of it, till it comes to join at the centre its correfpondent divifion of the other wing, when both are together to face to the rear, and march ftraight forward, and then go on with their priming and loading; and when the two centre divifions have likewile fired, they are to go to the right about, and march after the other leading divifions in Column. On each divifion having fired and retreated as above directed, the grenadiers on each flank are to occupy fucceffively the ground fo vacated by the divifions till they themfelves come to meet at the centre, when they alfo are to face to the rear and follow the Column, ftill not offering to fire, but where the moft abfolute neceffity requires, and then only one divifion at a time, in order that each may the better fuftain the other.

Note, In retreating, the Column is to march in a - very clofe compact body, for the reafon given in the cleventh word of command, and fhould it be then attacked the Column is then to halt, and the divifions are to face outwards from the centre, and keep clofe back to back, excepting the divifion which leads the retreat, which is to remain faced to the rear; and as for the reft, fee the eleventh word of command,

## XXV. Column. Halt.

## Direction.

The whole is to ftand faft.

## XXVI. Column, prepare to form the Line.

## Direction.

Number 2 and 9 being now both together, and conftituting the leading divifion of the Column are each to face to the left and right outwards, and the grenadiers are to do the fame.

## XXVII. Column, form the Line. March.

## Direction.

The grenadiers are to march as directed in the fourteenth word of command. The 2d and 9 th divifions are to march ftraight forward, at right angles. with the fhaft of the Column, to their proper ground in the line. When the 2 d and 9 th divifions have marched clear off the ground, upon which they ftood, the 3 d and 8 th are to move up to that place, and then to face likewife outwards from each other, às the leading divifions had juft done before them, and follow. The fame evolution is to be performed by the 4 th and 7 th divifions, but when the 5 th and 6 th divifions move up to the above ground, they are only to fland faft, and not to face outwards.

## XXVIII. Battalion. Halt.

## Direction.

The whole is to ftand faft.:

MILITARY DISCIPLINE. 167 XXIX. Battalion, face to the Front.

## Direction.

The $5^{\text {th }}$ and 6 th divifions are to come to the right about, and all the other divifions are to face to the front, and then drefs.
XXX. Battalion, by Files and Ranks, prepare to form the Column at the Centre.

## Direction.

Previous to this operation, the divifions numbered $4,5,6$, and 7 , are to be fubdivided; and then the inward fubdivifions of number 5 and 6 , on each fide of the centre, are to be appointed to lead the other fubdivifions of their refpective wings, which are to compofe that part of the mixed column formed of Ranks. The above matters being adjufted, then the whole Battalion is, on the above word of command being given, to face inwards to the centre, as directed in the fecond word of command, excepting the leading fubdivifions of number 5 and 6 , which are to fand faft.
XXXI. Battalion, form the Column. March:

## Direction.

The inward fubdivifions of number 5 and 6 are to march directly forwards, and the other fubdivifions are to join each other, as the whole divifions are directed
to do in the eighteenth word of command. The grand divifions, number 1 and 4 , are to march by files, and to place themfelves in that order clofe on the outward flanks of the above fubdivifions forming by ranks into column, as directed in word of command III, and the divifions of grenadiers are to march and poft themfelves at the head of the column, as directed in the fane word of command.

## XXXII. Columin. Halt.

## Direction.

See word of command IV,
XXXIII. Column, advance to the Charge.

Direction.
See word of command V.

## XXIX. Columit. Halt.

DireEtici?:
See word of command VI.
IXXV. Column, form to Front and flank Attacks.

## Dirceion.

Thofe that formed the flank part of the column by files, viz. the firft and fourth grand divifions, are to face
face outwards, as directed in word of command VII. and then to march ftraight forwards, as directed in word of command VIII. The fubdivifions that formed the centre part of the column by ranks, are to proceed at the fame time as the whole divifions are directed in word of command XXII. The grenadiers are likewife to face to the right and left outwards from their centre, and to march ftraight forward and poft themfelves on the two angles, made by the junction of the front face with the two flank faces, for the purpofes, either to cover thofe angles, or to prolong occafionally either face.

## XXXVI. Battalion, make ready and Fire.

Direction.
The whole is to fire as one intire line, by firings as will be be fhown farther on.

## XXXVII. Battalion, ceafe Firing.

## Direction.

The whole is to ceafe.
XXXVIII. Battalion, prepare to retreat by Column.

## Direction.

The grenadiers and that part of the battalion which had before formed the column by ranks, are to proceed as directed in word of command XXIII. And the
two flank faces, or that part which before formed the Column by fles, are to go to the right about and clofe into the fhaft of the column, as directed in word of command X , taking care at the fame time, gradually to clofe in as the fubdivifions come to fall in and form the centre part of the column; and on the column being thus formed and in compact order, the whole is to ftand faft.

## XXXIX. Column. Retreat.

## Direction.

See word of command XXIII. and word of command XI.

## XL. Column. Halt.

## Direction.

The whole is to fand faf.

## XLI. Column, prepare to form the Line.

Direction.
The grenadiers and the two flank divifions in files, viz. the firft and fourth grand divifions, are to proceed as directed in word of command XIII, and the two rear fubdivifions which led thofe of the column in ranks, are to face outwards to their refpective wings, as the whole divifions are directed in word of command XXV.

XLII. Columin,

## XLII. Column, form the Line.

## Direction.

The grenadiers and the firt and fourth grand divifions are to march and fall in, as directed in word of command XIV, and all the fub divifions at the centre are likewife to fall in to the line, as the divifions are directed in word of command XXVI.

## XLIII. Battalion. Halt.

## Direction.

The whole is to ftand faft.
XLIV. Battalion, face to the Front.

## Direction.

The two fub-divifions on each fide of the centre of the battalion, are to come to the right-about ; and all the reft of the battalion is to face to the front, and then drefs.
XLV. Battalion, by Divifion, prepare to form the Column to the Right.

Direction.
The feveral divifions are to hold themfelves in readinefs to wheel.
XLVI. Battalion, form the Column. March. Direction.

Each divifion is to wheel a quadrant.
XLVII. Column. Halt.

Direction.
See word of command IV.

## XLVIII. Column. March.

Direction.
The whole is to ftep off. See Chap. II. Sect. V1. Art. HIL.

## XLIX. Column. Halt. Direction.

The whole is to ftand faft ; and then each rear divifion is to drefs to its proper diftance from that which immediately precedes it.
L. Column, by Divifion, prepare to form the Line to the Right.

Direction.
Each divifion is to hold itfelf in readinefs.
LI. Column, form the Line. March.

## Direction.

Each divifion is to wheel a quadrant upon the right heel of the front rank man.

The intent of this difpofition is, that fhould the enemy be difcovered on the right flank of the Column; that then by wheeling the feveral divifions to the right, the line may at once be formed, in order to oppofe a front to his attack. The only inconvenience attending this operation is, that it reverfes the order in which the divifions had before ftood in the former line, by making that flank, which was then the interior, to become now the exterior; but this inconvenience is cafily obviated, by directing the officers commanding divifions to change their fituation at the time of wheeling, and to poft themfelves on the prefent exterior flanks of their refpective divifions, and then the dif. ference upon the whole will be very immaterial.

## LII. Battalion. Halt.

## Direction.

The whole is to ftand faft and drefs.
LIII. Battalion, by Divifion, prepare to wheel backwards to the Right, and form the Column.

> Direction.

The feveral divifions are to hold themfelves in readi-
nefs to wheel.

## LIV. Battalion, form the Column. March:

## Direction,

Each divifion is to wheel backward a quadrant upon the right heel of the front rank man ; and while that operation is performing the officers are to recurn to then former pofts.

Note, This operation can be otherwife performed by firft making the whole to go to the right about, and then each divifion to wheel to the left upon the left heel of the rear rank man; and afterwards to come to the right about, but as this operation requires more words of command ; and confequently more time in the performance, I have therefore made choice of the former method in preference to the latter, efpecially where the divifions are not too extenfive, as in the prefent cafe. But where a battalion is to wheel back by wings, or grand divifions, then this latter method will be found more convenient, and in fo much as an extenfive rank of men can wheel with greater eafe and exactnefs forward than backward.

## LV. Column. Halt.

Direction.
The whole is to ftand faft and drefs.

> LVI. Column. March.

Direction.

## Direction.

See word of command XLV.
LVIII. Column, by Divifion, prepare to forme the Line to the Left.

## Direction.

The feveral divifions are to hold themfelves in readinefs to wheel.
LIX. Column, form the Line: March. Direction.

Each divifion is to wheel a quadrant upon the left heel of the front rank man.

The intent of this difpofition is likewife to oppofe a front to the enemy, fhould he appear upon the left flank of the column.
LX. Battalion. Halt.

## Direction.

The whole is to ftand faft and drefs.
LXI. Battalion by divifion, prepare to wheel backwards to the Left, and form the Column.

## Direction.

The feveral divifions are to hold themfelves in reàdinefs to wheel.
LXII. Bat-
LXII. Battalion, form the Column. March.

## Direction.

Each division is to wheel back on the left heel of the front rank man.

## LXIII. Column. Halt.

## DireCtion.

The whole is to ftand fat and drefs.

> LXIV. Column. March. Direction.

The whole is to ftep off.
LXV. Column. Halt. Direction.

The whole is to ftand fat and drefs.
LXVI Column, by Divifion, prepare to forme the Line to your Van.

## Direction.

The feveral divifions are to hold themfelves in reqdines to form.
LXVII. Column, form the Line. March.

Note, Previous to this operation, I foal here fuppole your column to be on its march, through a road; pals,
pafs, or defile, and now to be upon the point of juft entering into a plain, or open piece of ground, where the enemy is difcovered ready drawn up in order to receive you; on notice of which, you are firft to halt and put yourfelf in order; and then you are carefully to obferve what fort of difpofition he has made, to the intent of your planning fome fcheme yourfelf, which may either counteract him, or at leaft procure you an advantage over him. To obtain which, one circumfance you will always have in your favour, which is, that he is confined, and you are at liberty to act, for a difpofition once made by the enemy, cannot, on any preffing occafion, be foon altered without fome difficulty and great hazard, of which a fagacious officer will never lofe fight, but endeavour, as opportunity offers, to avail himfelf.

According then to the above premifes, fuppofe the enemy fhould be drawn up clofe to the outlet of the pafs at which you are arrived. Now, in this cafe, it will be beft to line that part of the boundary of the plain next you, and from that cover to drive him off with your fire, or oblige him to retire at a greater diftance, or you may, by an unexpected fally and rapid pufh with your column, pierce at once his line, and then take him in flank on both fides, and either difperfe or cut him to pieces.

Or fuppofe you fhould find him drawn up in a crefcent, in order that he may with more advantage throw in his fire from all parts of his line, on the point of the outlet of the pafs. On this occafion you are to look for a convenient fituation from which you may command him, and take the horns of his crefcent in flank; and on your having found a proper place for the purpofe, and pofted your men, you are then to obferve the effect
cffect of your fire, and where you find it makes an impreffion, and thrcws the enemy into confufion, then is your moment to avail yourfelf of that happy circumftance, by making a fudden vigorous fally upon him, before he can have time to recollect himfelf, or to remedy his prefent diforder. Of all the affairs that occur in the fervice, attacks of this fort are thofe only by which an officer can have a fortunate opportunity to fignalize himfelf, and advance his reputation, there being nothing more wanting, but a little prefence of mind and vigour to follow his blow, and then he will have better than a thoufand to one in his favour that he fucceeds, for the repulfe of thofe who are near him will ever communicate a panic, and magnify the danger of thofe who are more remote, and then a handful of men will drive thoufands before them---fo loft are men when once they come to be difordered.

Or fuppofe you fhould obferve the enemy to be drawn up in a line at fome diftance from the outlet of the pafs, and there waiting to receive you. You are then firt to take notice how his left flank, which will always be oppofed to your right, bears from you in front; that is, whether it inclines to your right, to your left, or is directly oppofite to you; and as that will appear, you are to give, befides the fuitable, the following general inftructions to your leading divifion, which is to ferve as a guide to the cther fucceeding divifions how to proceed, and when to draw up. Firft, that it endeavours, before it wheels in order to draw up, to gain as much as it can on the oppofite flank of the enemy, fo as to out-flaink him, to the intent of procuring by that means a fuperior weight of fire upon him ; next, that if this advantage cannot be obtained, that it does at the leaft draw up oppofite to, but never within him, except
covered from his fire And laftly, that it be careful not to draw up fo near to the enemy, as to rikk its being cut off, before the other divifions can come up to join and fuftain it.

Thefe matters I have premifed in order to explain the intent of the fo!!owing operation, and to thew how to proceed on a fimilar occafion, I fhall now return to the point of exercife, and go on with it.

## Direction.

The firft or leading divifion is to ftand faft, and all the other fucceeding divifions are to keep marching on. As foon as the fecond divifion has clofed within two paces of the firft, it is to face to the left, and march directly forward, and when it has gained a diftance equal to its own extent, it is then to face to the front, and join the firft divifion. On the fecond divifion having marched clear from the rear of the firft, then the third divifion is to move up to that ground, and likewife face to the left, and draw up on the left of the fecond, and fo on with refpect to all the other divifions till the line is formed.

Note, The above operation points out only the method of forming the line, when the left of the enemy's line is either oppofite to you or inclines towards your left; but when his left ftands obliquely to your right, then there are two other methods for forming your line, and your choice of either will depend upon his fituation from you. See Chap. II. Sect. V. Art. VI. Suppofe for infance that he is drawn up about two hundred yards diftant from the outlet of your pafs, then in this cafe, it would be beft, without approaching him, to make your divifions wheel to the
right, and march in Column along his front, and parallel to him, till your leading divifion has gained, at the leaft, an oppofite direction to his left; when you are to form your line by making all your divifions to wheel at once to the left, and after which, to advance upon him ; or next, fhould he be drawn up at a greater diftance from the outlet of the pafs than the above, thèn you are, in order to fave ground and time, to march in Column in an oblique or diagonal direction towards his left; and when your leading divifion has obtained the length and diftance you require, then halt your Column, and order the whole to make fo much of a wheel to the left, as to bring the front of each divifion to be parallel to the line of the enemy, directing withal the fucceeding divifions, after they have thus wheeled, to march forward and joir each other in line.

## LX VIII. Battalion. Halt.

> Direction.

The whole is to ftand faft.
LXIX. Battalion, by Divifon, prepare to retreat by Column.

## Direction.

The feveral divifions are to hold themfelves in readinefs.

## MILITARY DISCIPLINM. 18I

## LXX. Battalion, Retreat. March.

## Direction.

This operation is nothing more but the reverfe of the former : in that, the line was formed from right to left; but in this, the line is reduced to Column from left to right ; which to effect, all that is requifite is, that the feveral divifions do fucceffively go to the right about, and march four paces forward; then face to the left, and march on in the rear of the line till it comes directly into the rear of the firft divifion, when it is to face to the right and march on.

Note. When a Retreat of this kind is to be made on fervice, it will be more expedited and much better done, by obferving the method prefcribed in the twenty-third word of command; and in order to make the retreat fill more fecure, it will be expedient for the two rear divifions, which lead the retreat, to poffefs themfelves immediately of fuch covers as border on the inlet of the pafs, through which the column is so retreat.

## LXXI. Column. Halt.

## Direction.

The whole is to ftand faft, and drefs,

## LXXII. Column, to the Right About.

## Dircction.

The whole is to come to the right about.
LEXIII.

## LXXIII. Column. March.

Direction.
The whole is to ftep off.

## LXXIV. Column. Halt. <br> Direction.

The whole is to ftand fart.
LXXV. Column, by Divijion, prepare to forme the Line to the Left.

## Direction.

The feveral divifions are to hold themselves in realdinefs.
LXXVI. Column, form the Line. March.

## Direction.

Each divifion is to wheel a quadrant.
LXXVII. Battalion. Halt.

Direction.
The whole is to ftand fast, and dress.

## MILITAPY DISCIPLINE 183

## Of pafing a Bridge.

A bridge may, in a great meafüre, be confidered as a defile or pafs, through which the column is to march, the near end being the inlet, ' and the farther end the outlet of that pafs; when the near end is fortified, it is with a view as well to prevent a furprife of thofe pofted on the other fide, as to keep open a communication with that fide of the country upon which fuch works are erected ; but when the farther end is fortified; it is only for the purpofe of oppofing a paffage over the Bridge. Hence it appears, that the methods of attack muft be as different as the defences are various, comprehending withal the nature of the ground, and the difpofition of the enemy; and as there is in either inftances a vaft variety, therefore it is, that no one method of attack which can be laid down or practifed at exercife will prove a fufficient inftrudion; for this reafon then I fhall only offer fome general rules, which will be found, not only more comprehenfive of this branch of difcipline, but will ferve to enlarge the ideas, and to give a greater fcope to the imagination than can be acquired by any contracted fyftem or fet form, which feldom anfwers any other end but to limit the refources, and to impoverifh the genius of an officer.

Firft then, previous to the paffing of the bridge, if good intelligence has not been already procured, the grcund adjoining to the place muft be well reconnoitred; that is, you are to fee under what cover you can to approach; what high or commanding fpots there are near it; what is the breadith of the river; what is the nature of the works erected
by the enemy; and what is the difpofition he has made.

After thefe obfervations have been made, and conformable to them you are to frame or plan your own difpofition of attack, and to provide yourfelf with the neceffary materials for it. With regard to the difpofition which you are to make, you are carefully to allot to each divifion its feparate and diftinct fervice, in order as well to prevent confufion, as that the feveral divifions may not clafh or interfere with each other, and that more men may not occupy any particular place than what are neceffary. You are likewife to appoint fome parties to annoy and keep the enemy in play, while the others are in the mean time employed in making preparations for the affault. And laftly, you are to affign to other divifions proper pofts, from whence they can conveniently and eafily fuftain and relieve the different attacks, and likwife to cover your retreat in cafe of neceffity.

Thefe points being regulated and fettled, I fhall now fuppofe, that the near end of the bridge is covered or defended by either a wall or a retrenchment of any particular form ; and that from the bank of the river, as is commonly the cafe, there is a rifing ground up from it; then the firf poft which you are to occupy, is to be that directly oppofite to the pafiage of the bridge, where you are to cover yourfelf, either by a trench or fome other means, which you may find moft convenient for your purpofe. This poft is fo much the more effential, as it not only gives you a command of the enemy's works, but as it enables you to fcour the bridge, and to prevent the approach of fuccours from the oppofite fide ; which laft you will better accomplifl,

MILITARYDISCIPLINE. $\quad 18$;
as moft bridges do rife at the centre, and of courfe fall off to each end, confequently the whole of the troops that come over it, will, from the centre, be expofed all the way to your fire, and in fo much as one man in the rear muft appear above him in his front, and that in propprtion as the flope or fpring of the bridge happens to be greater or lefs.

Next you are, in order to expedite the attack, and to diftract and ftrike terror into the enemy, to make two or more affaults at the fame time, or to embrace all at. once his works on each fide, fo as to oppofe a front to each face of his defences; and for which purpofe, you are firft to detach to thofe places fmall parties to begin the attack, confifting each of a fingle rank, in order as well to draw off the fire of the enemy, as that the feveral divifions behind may, in the mean time, come up intire to join them, before thofe who defend can have time again to load. The intent of detaching fingle ranks for the above purpofe, preferable to two or more ranks drawn up in the rear of each other, is to render the fire of the enemy upon thofe parties the more uncertain and ineffectual, by having a more open and a lefs compact body to fire at. On the arrival of your divifions, the men muft be directed to behave with great coolnefs and deliberation, and to fire at none but thofe immediately oppofite to themfelves; and if this regulation is well obferved, neither great guns or fmall arms will be able much to annoy them, fince the firft cannot be worked without the men belonging to them being expofed to your fire through the embrafures, nor can the laft have effect, fince thofe who defend muft appear above the parapet in order to give their fire over it, and then they can be inftantly picked off
or beat down again under that cover before they can have time to prefent, or take any fixed arm. Matters being thus diffored, the pioneers are next to follow, being furnifhed with the proper materials fuitable to the nature of the enemy's works; fuch as fealing ladders, fafcines to fill the ditch, hooks or other implements for pulling down and deftroying the works, \&c. Where fcaling ladders are requifite, the application of them will be found moft fuccefsful under cover of the night or a thick fog, as the obfcurity under which the attack is then made, not only magnifies the danger, but diffufes terror and confufion among thofe who defend; but the cafe is otherwife in clear day light, as then the place where thofe ladders are planted can be eafily feen, to which parties may be fent to oppofe the attack; and beifides, as the tops of thofe ladders muft neceffarily reach higher than the enemy's work's, they likewife can be feen, and can without any difficulty be eafily fhoved off or overturned with forks, and without thofe who do it being expofed, at the time, to any confiderable degree of danger; but in all thofe attacks a great deal will depend upon circumftances which muft ever govern the conduct of him in command. But as to fquare or triangular redoubts, having no baftions, and formed only by retrenchments, in the attack of fuch like works fealing ladders are ufelefs at all times, the other requifites being fufficient; only obferving, that if there be attillery in the place which you are to attack, that you advance, if you can, in the direction of the capital line of fuch works; and then the guns being in the embrafures, made in the fides of the redoubt, and you of courfe in an oblique direction to them, they cannot therefore be well traverfed or broc:ght to bear
upon you with any degree of effect, fo as either to retard or difable you:

This outwork of the Bridge being thus attacked and carried, the next ftep is to prepare for the paffage of the Bridge itfelf. To oppofe which, I fhall again fuppofe the enemy to have thrown up another work at the farther end, in the form of a crefcent or femipolygon, in order that he may the more conveniently increafe his weight of fire upon the point of paffage or outlet of the Bridge.

The preparations then neceffary for this attack are; firft, you are carefully to obferve what part, and how much of the enemy's works lie open, or expofed to your view, from your fide of the river, and then mark that place from whence you can enfilade or take him in flank acrofs the river, directing thofe, whom you intend to poft there, not to appear, nor to begin their fire till the column is on the point of attack; in order that the enemy may be the lefs prepared at that juncture to guard againft fo unexpected a blow, of being taken both in front and flank at the fame time.

The difpofition which you are further to make, and the materials which you are to provide requifite for this affault, are much the fame as thofe of the laft attack, but'if high mantelets can be procured, to roll on and cover the men in front as they advance, they will be of infinite fervice, and will favour much the attack.

Note, I could wifh to have mantelets made of a particular conftruction, fuch as have not only fmall holes made in them for the men behind occafionally to fire through, but to have hinges at the bottom, that when the braces or arms that keep them'upright are lët loofe, they may fall forward, for the purpofes as well of
clearing all obftructions to thofe behind, as of making a convenient bridge to pafs over narrow trenches.

But if mantelets cannot be provided, then I would have the leading divifions to fling their mufkets over one fhoulder, and to carry fafcines in their hands advanced before them, and thofe of fuch fufficient length as will not only cover effectually the line of life, but will appear at leaft a foot above their heads, in order to afford thofe in the rear fo much a better fhelter ; and when thofe in front come to arrive at the point of attack, they are then to throw down at once their fafcines, and handle their arms; and while they are thus feverally employed in attacking their refpective parts of the defence, the pioneers are to move up and proceed as before directed.

In advancing to this or any other attack, the men are to march brifkly on, and for thefe effential purpofes. Firft, that it ferves to animate them the more; and next, that it proves the only means to ftrike difmay and confufion into the enemy, and to induce him in confequence to throw away his fire, either precipitately or at too great a diftance.

Having thus conducted yourfelf and driven off the enemy, you are inftantly to detach parties in purfuit of him, in order to avail yourfelf of his prefent diforder, and to prevent his re-affembling again to diflodge you, and could you have profecuted the fame fcheme at the other end of the bridge, in confequence of your firft attack, it would prove the moft fure means of facilitating likewife the fuccefs of this laft enterprize, and with little or no lofs on your fide ; it being a matter to be depended upon, that thofe who fly from you will not only effectually cover you from the oppofite fixe, but will ever excite terror, confufion and difor-

## MILITARY DISCIPLINE. 189

der, among thofe to whom they have recourfe for protection. This is then the critical moment for which you are to lie in wait, and at which you are as eagerly to grafp, it being from fuch lucky opportunities as thefe, that an active fagacious officer can never fail to eftablifh his reputation, and to give credit and honour to himfelf and to the troops of his prince.

The enemy being difperfed, and proper precautions in confequence taken to maintain the pofts fo acquired, then the parties which had been left on the other fide of the river to favour the paffage of the bridge are to be called in, and afterwards difmiffed to their refpective corps or fations.

But as any attack, however well planned and conducted, is neverthelefs liable, from fome accident or unforefeen circumfance, to be rendered abortive, prudence then fhould direct him in command, previoufly to make a provifion for fuch an event, fo as to hinder a repulfe from becoming as far as can be a fatal misfortune. To this end, there are two things which he muft fudioully endeavour to prevent and to guard againft. The one is, the diforder and confufion incident to a repulfe; and the other is, the purfuit of the enemy, which is feidom or never neglected on the occafion. As to the firf, the whole command is previoufly to be informed, to what place and by what pa/s the retreat is to be made, and how the feveral divifions are fucceffively to fall in; but as the order of fucceflion here mentioned is more a form of exercife, than a rule of fervice, the divifions in this laft cafe are to follow each other, as they thall happen occafionally to be drawn off, and on their arrival at their place of deftination or rendezvous, then, and not before, they are to return if need be, to their former order or fta-
tion.
tion. And as to the laft, namely, the purfuit of the enemy, care is to be taken that a referve or fufficient body of men be pofted in fuch advantageous places as may not only command the pafs through which the retreat is to be made, but may ferve to check and oppofe the progrefs of the enemy, directing fuch party not upon any account to abandon or give up fuch pofts, before the command is either formed to receive the enemy, or has gained a fufficient diftance to fecure the retreat.

Now it may be obferved, from all the foregoing circumftances, and by a vaft variety of others occafioned by the difference of ground or difpofition of the enemy, that no one method which can be practifed or introduced at exercife for paffing a bridge, will prove a fufficient inftruction, or even will convey a tolerable idea of this part of the fervice ; and therefore, I am of opinion, that a prefcription of fome general rules, fimilar to what I have touched upon, will be found more comprehenfive and far better to be depended upon, fubmitting afterwards all other occurrences and cafualties to the genius and judgment of him in command.

## S e c т. IV. Of the Square.

The Square is a regular hollow figure, having four cqual fides and angles: the fides are all called faces, which are termed and diftinguifhed by their fituation, as front face, rear face, right face, left face; but thofe fides or faces do not, as in a geometrical fquare, meet or terminate in a point at the angle, but they are fo contrived to lock, or fhut in, as that the right of each face may cover the left flank of the contiguous face.

Now as thofe faces ftand of courfe at right angles with each other, they are therefore capable to oppofe an attack made in their refpective directions; but as the direction of the angles ftand oblique to that of the faces, therefore the faces cannot fo effectually fuftain and defend the angles as they can themfelves, by which means the angles lie open and expofed to any attack made directly upon them. To remedy then this defect, platoons or divifions are pofted on thofe angles to cover them as will be fhown further on.

The intent of the fquare is folely calculated to defend infantry againft cavalry. There are two ways for forming the fquare, one from the line and the other from the columin. For each of thefe purpofes, there have been various fchemes and methods propofed, but I own, that of all I have yet feen or heard of, there were none with which I could be pleafed, becaufe that from the line is founded upon wrong principles, being not practicable upon fervice, or at beft exceffively dangerous; and that from the colimn is partial and not general, fhowing us only how to form the fquare out of a fingle battalion, but not out of a greater number. Nor am I more reconciled to our management of the platoons which cover the angles, that method being alfo erroneous, it being impoffible to obtain fufficient time for the requifite operations, or if attempted, it mult be at the rifk of total defiruction.

Now, in order to fupport thefe my affertions, I flall begin with each method in the orcier it ftands, and firft with refpect to that of forming the fquare from the line In this particular let it be obferved, that it is, in the firft place, an eftablifhed maxim, "That no officer commanding infantry ought to form his line
againft cavalry, where he cannot with fafety fecure his flanks and'rear ;" becaufe, fhould he neglect this precaution, the motion of cavalry being fo rapid, that before he could have time to alter his difpofition, or to change his fituation, he muft inevitably be furrounded and cut to pieces; and, in the next place, it is no lefs a maxim, "That no officer fhould form the fquare againft infantry ;" becaufe he muft, by fo doing, prefent and expofe to the enemy two of his flanks from any direct view of either face. Hence then, in both thefe inftances, the abfurdity of any fcheme to form the line, in order to form from thence the Square; and therefore I muft condemn any method whatever of forming the fquare from the line, being totally repugnant to reafon.

Next with refpect to our method of forming the fquare from the column, confifing of a fingle battalion. This I alfo object to, becoufe the rule is partial and not general; that is, it informs us very well how the fquare is to be formed out of a fingle battalion, and there it refts, but it furnifles us with no fort of direction or affiftance how that is to be effected out of a greater number. I am therefore for having fome general rule to guide an officer, by which he can with equal eafe and regularity form his fquare, whether it is to confit of one or of ever fo great a number of battalions, fince it muft be confeffed, that there are circumfances, which, I fhall relate farther on, that require occafionally fquares of different magnitudes and capacities; and where no rule is prefcribed for that purpofe, the want of it muft be productive of great confufion, irregularity, and lofs of time; and, in the run of events, may prove fatal to the fervice, as well as detrimental to the reputation of him in command.

And lafty, with refpect to the management of the platoons which cover the angles of the fquare: Our method is, that when each of thofe platoons has fired, the adjacent angle, or the angle it covers, then opens, in order to admit it into the fquare by way of retreat, where it remains till fuch time as it is loaded again when it is to return.

Now, in order to point out the impropriety of this method, it will be neceffary to confider, whether there is fufficient time for the above operations. To this end, then, I fhall fuppofe a body of cavalry making a direct charge upon one of the angles, and that this attack is made with a velocity equal to the rate of only eight miles an hour, and that the platoon which covers that angle fires at fo great a diftance as forty yards.

Now there are 1760 yards in a mile, which multiplied by 8 , the velocity of attack, give 14080, the number of yards in eight miles, and this number, 14080, being divided by $60^{\prime}$, the number of minutes in an hour,, the quotient will be 234.66 yards, the fpace of ground over which the attack will move in a fingle minute. Again, let 234.66 be divided by $60^{i \prime}$, the number of feconds in a minute, the quotient of which divifion will be 3.91 , the number of yards the attack will alfo pafs over in a fecond of time. Then let 40 , the diftance in yards the cavalry is firft fired at, be divided by 3.91 , the quotient will be $10^{\text {it }} .20$ or little better than the fixth of a minute, the time in which the platoon, after firing, is to face and march by files into the fquare; and alfo for the divifion of the angle which had wheeled out to admit that platoon to wheel back again to its former ground, and fettle itfelf to receive the attack continued.

Now the point under confideration will be, whether
the time of about the fixth of a minute, and regarding it withal as too favourable a computation, will be fufficient to effect che above retreat, according to our prefent method, befides confidering that the larger the platoon is which covers the angle, the longer time it will of courfe require to retreat, or to get into the fquare. The anfiver, in my opinion, requires not the leaft degree of hefitation, even were the time double or treble, feeing that the fmalleft fop or failure, occafioned by any means at fo critical a juncture, muft be attended with inevitable deftruction to the whole. Befides, if it be held neceffary for this platoon to cover the angle of the fquare, as certainly it is, then why is not that coverture continued, fince it muft be as ufeful at one time as at an other? and more efpecially at a time when it is moft wanted, for common fenfe will inform us, that it is equally as well fuftained on the outfide of the fquare, after it has fired, as any other part of the fquare can be under the like circumftance, after its having alfo fired, as will be demonftrated farther on. And hence my reafon for rejecting this method.

Having now ${ }^{*}$ reprefented the impropriety and difadvantage attending our prefent methods of forming the fquare, as well from the line as from the column, and alfo the mifmanagement of the platoons which cover the angles, it now remains for me to offer a fcheme, in order to remedy thofe defects. I have already condemned every attempt to form the fquare from the line, and therefore I fhall difcard that point, and will confine myfelf only to the forming of it from the column, and in which plan I fhall give the neceffary directions for the management of the platoons which are to cover the angles. But previous to this defign,

It will be convenient to give the following inftructions to the Adjutant or Major of each Battalion.
I. That he do carefully inform himfelf of what number of battalions the whole column doth confift, with the order of march, or the fucceffion of the feveral battalions as they march in column.
II. That each battalion be divided into ten divifions or rather companies, and numbered from right to left. The reafons for which will be hereafter given.
III. That the firft and tenth divifions, whether of grenadiers or of battalion-men, be each fubdivided and appointed to cover the angles of the fquare; and in fuch a manner that the firft divifion may cover the angles of the front face, while the tenth do likewife cover thofe of the rear ; but when two or more battalions are conjointly to form a fquare, then the number of thofe fubdivifions appointed for covering the angles in each battalion is collectively to be divided into four equal parts, always contriving to let thofe which compofe any angle divifion be as near as poffible to their refpective battalions, in order that they may the more conveniently fall in and join, when the fquare comes to be reduced again to column.
IV. That the eight other divifions of the battalion, viz. the $2 \mathrm{~d}, 3^{\mathrm{d}}, 4^{\text {th }}, 5$ th, 6 th, 7 th, 8 th and 9 th be told off into four grand divifions, as before directed, and appointed to compofe the faces of the Square, giving one grand divifion to each face, in the following order, viz. The ift grand divifion, or the 2 d and 3 d divifions to make the front face. The 2d grand divifion, or the 4 th and 5 th divifions, to make the right face. The $3^{d}$ grand divifion, or the 6 th and $7^{\text {th }}$ divifions, to make the left face. And the 4th grand divifion, or the 8 th and 9 th divifions, to form teh rear face.

B b
Now

Now, by this difpofition of the divifions it may be obferved, that a fingle battalion thus told off, gives one grand divifion to each face of its Square ; confequently, if there were two battalions joined together to form a Square, there would then be two grand divifions to each face. Hence then the following Rule; viz.

## That each face of every Square do confft of as many grand divifions as there are battalions to compofe the Square.

V. That the face divifions of the whole Column from front to rear, or as many battalions as are intended to form a Square be told off into four equal parts; letting thofe of each part know the face to which they belong, that each part may in fucceffion draw up, as is dirccted in the laft inftruction, that is, the firft part is to make the front face, the fecond the right face, the thiird the left face, and the 4 th the rear face.
VI. That the diftance of each angle divifion or platoon, from the angular point of the Square it is to cover, be equal to half the extent of that platoon, taking the meafurement from that point, to the centre of the rear rank of that platoon.
VII. That thofe platoons which cover the angles be pofted not in the direction of the diagonal of the Square, as our prefent method directs, but in the direction of and at right-angles with a line fuppofed to be drawn from the left-hand man of the front rank of one face to the left-hand man of the like rank in the oppofite face, placing the centre of each platoon upon that line.

The

## MILITARY DISCIPLINE. 197

The reafon of the above difpofition is this, that as the faces are not in contact with each other at the angular point, as in a geometrical Square, but are fo placed to thut in, as that the left flank of each face may be covered by the right of that adjoining to it; then as the right flank of every face will by that means lie open and expofed, therefore, were the platoon to be placed on the diagonal of the Square, as our prefent method directs, it could not well cover that flank : and for this reafon I have, in order to remedy that defect, pofted the platoons as above direc--d. See the annexed Figure.

The Square formed, out of one Battalion, confifting of four grand Divifions.

Front Face.


## Explanation.

Let ABCD reprefent the different faces of the Square, B the left flank of the right face, covered by A the right flank of the front face.; and fo of all the left flanks of the other faces. EFG the fuppofed line,
line, paffing through the left fhoulders of the oppofite faces. H the platoon to cover the angle of the Square, ftanding at right angles with the iine E F G. H the right of the platoon, covering the right flank N of the right face; which otherwife, by our prefent method, would lie open and expofed. The ift and loth divifiuns, or thofe appointed to cover the angles of the Square, are each fubdivided into two platoons, and denoted by the fractional figures in their due places, $\frac{1}{1}, \frac{2}{1}, \frac{1}{10}, \frac{2}{10}$; that is, $\frac{1}{1}$ fignifies the 1 ft fubdivifion or platoon of the ift divifion, covering the right angle of the front face, $\frac{2}{T}$ the fecond fubdivifion of the firft divifion, pofted on the left angle of the front face. $\frac{T^{\prime}}{10}$ the firft fubdivifion of the 10 th divifion. And ${ }_{T}^{20}$ the fecond fubdivifion of the roth divifion. And the figures $5,2,3,4$, fhew the fituation of the four grand divifions or face divifions, which compofe the Square ; and likewife the order of fucceffion, in which they are to draw up and poft themfelves to each face.
VIII. That the angle-platoons be directed not to retire into the Square on firing, but to remain at their ground. The reafon for which is founded upon the two following propofitions.

## PROP. I.

That every line of infantry, oppofed to any other line of Infantry or Cavalry of cqual extent, is capable to defend itfolf under fimilar circumftances:

Confequently, each angle-platoon of a Square muft be held capable to maintain its ground againft a front or rank no greater extent than itfelf.

PROP.

## PROP. II.

That the nearer the fide is of any Figure to the centre, the leffer will that fide be.

Suppofe then GI, of the laft Figure, to be the fide of an external fquare, or to be a line of cavalry, oppofed to the fide CK of the internal fquare. Now were GI to move directly inwards, fo as to place itfelf at CK ; then, by the figure, as the part LM of the line GI will be only equal in extent to CK ; therefore, by Prop. I. CK is capable to defend itfelf againft LM.

Hence it is evident, that no fquare can be attacked by cavalry, but by a front, at moft, equal to the part attacked; and that only, with this certain difadvantage, as 15 is to 19 ; that is, 15 of cavalry in rank will occupy juft as much ground as 19 of infantry will dọ, allowing three feet two inchés to each horfeman, and two feet fix inches to each foldier. And befides the above advantage, which infantry have over cavalry, there is one fill greater, which is, that only the front rank of cavalry can immediately attack, becaufe it ferves as a barrier to keep back the other rear ranks; whereas the whole three ranks of infantry can at once engage, and be mutually affifting to each other.

Hence the advantage which infantry have over cavalry ; and that all fquares, however fmall in themfelvies, are equally formidable againft cavalry.

But it may now be afked, that if I will not allow the platoon on the angle to retire into the fquare after it has fired, how then are its flanks to be fecured?' I anfwer, that the two contiguous faces are, either to give a fianking fire on thofe who muft wheel in to attack,
tack the flanks of that platoon, or at once to move out and join thofe flanks. " And were different attacks to be likewife made, at the fame time, upon the other angles, then the other faces are alfo to move out and fuftain their platoons; by which difpofition the fquare will affume the figure of an octagon, ftill more formidable than that of the fquare, as the angle of the polygon in one is 135 deg. and in the other but 90 deg . And this new figure of the octagon is fo much the more preferable to the orb of the ancients, fo much fpoken of, as regular files can be had in the one, but not in the other; and as a ftraight line is more manageable than a curve, the fire in the former being parallel, but that in the latter, diverging, and confequently not of equal weight.

Having already fhewn how a fquare can, with equal eafe and regularity, be formed, whether it is to confift of one or of any number of battalions, I am now to reprefent the different capacities of fquares, according to the number of battalions of which each is compofed, knowing that no officer can well comprehend this effential article, except he is endowed with fome fimall degree of mathematical learning; and to thofe chiefly, who may be deficient in that refpect, I take the liberty to addrefs this point.

It often happens that an officer is appointed to conduct the march of a number of battalions, with the neceffary baggage; and to have befides under his care a quantity of ammunition and fores; and that his route lies over open plains where he may be attacked by cavalry.

Now an officer who is ignorant of the different capacities of Squares, will moft probably argue thus with himfelf: " If I form a fquare conffifing of two, three
oi four battalions, that fquare will contain no more than twice, thrice or four times as much as the fquare of a fingle battalion ; and as that face will not be fufficient to hold the quantity of baggage or ftores under my convoy, I muft therefore make fome other difpofition."

Here then lies the miftake, fince the capacity of fquares is to each other as the fquare number of the battalions which compofe them; that is, a fquare compofed of two battalions will contain four times the fpace which a fingle battalion gives, as the fquare number of two is four. If of three battalions, nine times the fpace, the fquare number of three being nine. And if of four battalions, fixteen times the fpace, and fo on, aswill be feen in the following table calculated for any number of battalions under elevien.


By the above table it appears, that were a fquare to confift of ten battalions, the capacity of it would then be an hundred times as great as one compofed of a fingle battalion; which may be eafily demonftrated by giving a grand divifion, the fourth part of a battalion, to each face of the fquare; and then by drawing as many lines as there are grand divifions, from any one face to its oppofite both ways; then the number of fmall fquares fo defcribed and contained within the great fquare, will explain and folve the propofition, for each fmall iquare is precifely equal to the face comprehended in a fquare compofed of a fingle battalion.

An officer then thus knowing the capacity of different fquares, has nothing more to do but to adapt

## MILITARY DISCIPLINE. 203

his fquare to whatever he intends to lodge within it, and afterwards to profecute his march through any open country in that order.

But where he happens to be neither incumbered with baggage or ammunition, I am in that cafe again凡 his forming a greater fquare than that, at moft, of a fingle battalion, and for the following reafon. Admit that an officer is charged with the conduct of three or four battalions, and on entering a plain, he forms them into one entire fquare. Now fhould he be attacked by cavalry; and that from fome unlucky accident, or the mifconduct of others, the enemy fhould find means to pierce any part of his fquare, then total deftruction muft inevitably follow: But on the other land, were there, inftead of this great fquare, as many finall fquares formed as there are battalions, each being equally as formidable in itfelf as one of a greater capacity, and thofe feveral fquares directed to purfue their march at about an hundred paces diftant from each other, then no fuch difafter could well happen, for if any one of thofe fmall fquares is attacked, the other fquares being at hand could not only eafily move up and fuftain it, but could afford that which might perhaps be broke, a fafe and convenient retreat.

But admitting that an officer hàs not under his command fo confiderable a body of men as the above, andthat he is only marching with a detachment condifting of about fixty men : Now in this cafe, as he cannot fo well form fo fmall a body into a fquare, he muft therefore have recourfe, to fome other expedient. The one then which I would recommend is, to march - his party by files doubled in column ; that is, let him firft draw up his men three deep, and fubdivide them, and then face them to the right or to the left, as his
rout direĉs, making his rear fubdivifions to march up and join his front, and in that order he is to purfue his march : Now, fhould he find himfelf on the point of being attacked, he is then to halt, clofe up his files, face outwards from the centre, and ftand clofe back to back, giving directions to thofe files, as far as three deep, in the front and rear of his column, to face occafionally to the attack, and receive it ; and thus, by a judicious nianagement of thofe files, he will find himfelf capable to bafile the efforts of a confiderable body of cavalry; or at the worft, to make them pay f.ir dearer for their defeat of him, then it will prove of account to them.

And now having offered my fcheme how the fquare is to be formed occaficnally out of any number of battalions, I fhall, in purfuance of that plan, go on with the exercife.

## I. Battalion, by Divifion, to the right rubeel and form the Column. March. Direction.

Each divifion is to wheel a quadrant,

## II. Column. Halt.

## Direction.

The whole is to ftand faft.
III. Column. March.

## Direction.

The whole is to ftep off, beginning the march with the left foot.
IV. Column,

## Direction.

Each divifion is to hold itfelf in readinefs.
> V. Column, from Divifion, form Grand Divifion.

## Direetion.

The firf or leading divifion is to keep moving on. The even-numbered divifions, viz. the fecond, fourth, fixth, and eighth, are on their march to incline to the right, to the length of the breadth of a fubdivifion, or to half the breadth of their prefent rank; while the odd-numbered divifions, viz. the third, fifth, feventh, and ninth, incline likewife to their left; and on having obtained a fufficient inclination, then each of thofe divifions to march directly forward with a quick pace, and join its immediate leading divifion on the left. And as to the tenth divifion, it is, as the firft divifion had done, to keep marching on in the line of its firft direction.

## VI. Coluinn. Halt.

## Direction.

The whole is to ftand faft.

## VII. Columit, prepare to form the Square.

## Direfion.

The whole is to be in readinefs.

## VIII. Column, form the Square.

## Direction.

The firft or leading divifion is to fubdivide, and face to the right and left outwards from the centre, the right fubdivifion of which is to march and cover the right angle of the front face, while the left fubdivifion marches likewife to cover the left angle of the fame face. The firft or leading grand divifion is to halt, and make the front face. The fecond grand divifion is to halt with the firft, and then wheel to the right, and form the right face, letting its left flank be juft covered by the right flank of the front face. The third grand divifion is to keep moving on, and when it arrives at the ground from whence the fecond had wheeled, it is then to wheel to the left, and make the left face; and afterwards to incline a little to the right, fo as to caufe its right flank juft to cover the left flank of the front face. The fourth and laft grand divifion, which is to make the rear face, is to continue marching on, till it comes to join the flanks of the fecond and third grand divifions, inclining then fo much to the left, as to bring its right flank to be juft covered by the right flank of the right face, and its left to cover likewife the left flank of the left face. And laftly, the tenth, or rear divifion is, as the firft had done, to fubdivide and likewife cover the angles of the rear face.

## IX. Square, face outwards:

## Direction.

The rear face, with the two platoons or fubdivifions of the tenth divifion, are to go to the right about, making
making their rear their prefent front; and the officers commanding thefe feveral divifions are likewife to change their fituation, going from their former to their prefent front.

The fquare being thus formed, it will be neceffary, before I proceed further, to offer a few precautions, proper to be attended to in the conduct of the fquare upon fervice. Firft, let it be obferved, that the fquare is only calculated to defend infantry againft the attack of cavalry; and that cavalry can no where act but in an open place or country, confequently, as the fquare is only ufeful in that fituation, it is therefore to be no where formed but on entering a plain.

Next, that the fquare be fo contrived, as not to be an unneceffary incumbrance to itfelf; that is, fhould the fquare confift of fo great a body of men, as to make the front face fo over extenfive as to render the márch extremely troublefome, either by the interruption of ground, or by the difficulty of preferving a ftraight compacted front; in this cafe then, it will be beft, if what is contained within the fquare will admit, to reduce the fquare to a parallelogram, by taking as many divifions from the front and rear faces as may be thought needful ; which divifions may afterwards be either added to the right and left faces, or formed into a referve to ufe occafionally.

And laftly, let it ever be remembered, that if cavalry can but penetrate any part of the fquare, total deftruction muft inevitably follow ; therefore, as no difpofition whatever requires greater precaution to guard againft fo fatal an event, a referve muft ever be appointed; and that referve is, as above, to be taken from the front and rear faces, and to be pofted as follows within the fquare, viz. to appoint a platoon
to each angle, and as many to each face, as may be judged fufficient for its length; and as there platoons cannot fire three deep, they are to be drawn up in two ranks, and placed at fix or eight yards diftance from the face or angle they are intended to fuftain, in order that they may the more conveniently fire over the heads of tho fe who are attacked.
X. Square, by your front Face, prepare to advance.

## Direction.

The right face is to face to the left; as is the left face to the right. The rear face, with the two platoons which cover the angles of that face, are to come to the right about ; and then thofe angle-platoons, with thole of the front face, are to bring their infide flanks to join the flanks of their reflective faces which either lead or follow, and to range themfelves in the fame line with them.

## XI. Square. March.

## Direction.

The whole is to ftep off together.

> XII. 'Square. Halt.

Direction.
The whole is to ftand fart.

## XIII. Square, face outwards.

## Direction.

The right face is to face to the right, as is the left face to the left. The rear face, with the two angleplatoons of that face, are to go to the right about; and then the four angle-platoons are to poft themfelves on their refpective angles, as before directed.
XIV. Square, by your rear Face, prepare to retreat.

## Direction.

The right face is to face to the right, as is the left face to the left. The front face, with the two angleplatoons of that face, are, at the fame time, to go to the right about ; and then the four angle-platoons are to join their refpective faces, as before directed in the tenth word of command, and to drefs in a line with them.

## XV. Square. Retreat.

## Direction.

The whole is to ftep off together.

## XVI. Square: Halt.

## Direction.

The whole is to ftand faft.

## XVII. Square, face outwards.

## DireRtion.

The front face, with the two angle platoons of that face, are to come to the right about. The right face is to face to the left, as is the left face to the right; and then the four angle platoons are to poft themfelves on their refpective angles.

Note, In the fame manner as the front and rear faces have advanced añd retreated, fo are the right and left faces occafionally to perform, having a regard to the different pofitions of the men.

As the Square is altogether calculated, as has been before faid, for defence againft cavalry, therefore the advancing of the Square, either by one face or another, is not to be confidered in any other refpect than as the means of profecuting the intended march or route, but never with a view to attack. And on the other hand, the retreating of the Square, either by this or that face, is undertaken for no other purpofe but to gain fame wood, inclofure, or defile, where cavalry cannot act; and even this is only done, on difcovering that infantry as well as cavalry are advancing to attack it, or on feeing that part of the cavalry are difnounting to fupply the place of infantry, then it will be beft to retreat betimes to fome place of cover neareft at hand, becaufe no Square can poffibly refift the united attacks of infantry and cavalry.

## XVIII. Square, by grand Divifion, prepare to reduce to Column.

## Direction.

The rear face and the two angle-platoons of that face, with the right and left faces, are all to go to the right about, and the two angle-platoons of the front face, with thofe of the rear face, are to face inwards to each other:

## XIX. Square, form the Column. March.

## Direction.

The two angle-platoons of the front face, and thofe of the rear face, are to march and join each other, oppofite the centre of their refpective faces, and then face to the front. The fecond grand divifion is to wheel to the left inwards, and then come to the right about. The firft or now the leading divifion, is to march flowly forward, followed by the firft and fecond grand divifions. When the fecond grand divifion has juft marched clear from the third, the third is then to wheel to the right inwards, and afterwards come to the right about, and march after the fecond: And as foon as the third grand divifion begins to march, the fourth grand divifion, with the tenth divifion in its rear, are to ftep off and follow.

Note, When the Square is compofed of two or more battalions, the right and left faces are, at the fame time, to wheel together inwards, either by divifion or grand divifion, as the commanding officer will choofe

D d
to direct, and then come to the right about. The divifions of the front face, except that on the right, are to wheel to the right. Thofe of the rear face, except that on the right, are likewife to wheel to the right, as foon as thofe which compofed the left face have given fufficient room for that performance, and then thofe divifions of the feveral faces are, in the fucceffion of front, right, left, and rear faces, to fall in one after another and form the Column. And with refpect to the firft and tenth divifions of each battalion, they are to fall in at the front and rear of their refpective battalions; and then the whole is to profecute the intended march in that order, obferving their due diftances from each other, both in divifion and battalion.

As the Square is to be only formed upon fervice on entering a plain, fo it is to be reduced on going out of it. When nothing is to be apprehended from the enemy, the Square is then to be reduced in the foregoing manner. But fhould the enemy fill perfevere in his views of making an impreffion, then the rear part of the Square is to face outwards, and gradually diminifh itfelf, till the whole has entered the road or defile, through which the Column is to march. But, previous to this operation, fufficient parties are to be detached from the front face, and pofted on each fhoulder of the defile, to protect the rear of the Square, when it fhall begin in Column to enter; and in order to fecure ftill more the rear, thofe detached parties are afterwards to march on each flank of the rear divifion, that together, they may give a triple fire on any party of the enemy, who may be rafh enough to venture an attack.

But fhould there be contained within the Square aay particular quantity of ammunition, ftores, \&c. then

## MILITARYDISCIPLINE.

previous to the reduction of it, the front face is firft to open, in order to let the contents pafs through and go on before; and afterwards the Square is to break into Column, as already directed, and follow.

## XX. Column. Halt.

## Direction.

The whole is to ftand faft.

## XXI. Column to the right About.

## Direction.

The whole is to face accordingly.
Note, The intent of going to the right about in this place, is only to regain the former ground of exercife.

## XXII. Column. Retreat.

Direction.
The whole is to ftep off.
XXIII. Column, face to the right About.

## Direction.

The whole is to face accordingly, continuing their: march.
XXIV. Column, from grand Divifion, reduce to Divifion.

## Dircetion.

The firft and tenth divifions are to keep moving on in their prefent direction, all the even numbered divifions are to advance and incline half the breadth of a divifion to the left, or fo much-as juft to be covered by the firft or leading divifion, while all the odd numbered divifions do at the fame time recede and incline likewife to the right, each divifion of the whole taking care to obtain its due diftance, from that which precedes it.

## XXV. Column. Halt.

## Dirceition.

The whole is to ftand faft.
XXVI. Column, by Divifion, to the Left; wheel and form the Line. March.

## Direction.

All the divifions are to wheel accordingly, and to come up at once to their ground in the line.

## MILITARYDISCIPLINE. 215

## XXVII. Line. Halt.

## Direction.

The whole is to ftand faft.
The Adjutant having thus perfected the men committed to his charge in the different arrangements of the Line, the Column and the Square, he is next to report their condition to his commanding officer, informing him, at the fame time, of the ftate under which he received them from the Serjeant, that they may afterwards be occafionally exercifed by their commiffioned officers, and kept perfect in thofe points already taught them.

## CHAP.

## CH A P. V.

The Exercife, as it is to be performed by Signal or Word of Command from the Major, or from any other Officer.

S e c T. I. Of Signals and Operations.

Signals by the Drum.
Operations.

AShort Roll - - To caution
Flam - - To perform any diftinct Thing.
To Arms - - - To form the Line or Battalion.
The March - - To advance, except when intended for a Salute.
The quick March - - To advance quick.
The Point of War - To March and Charge. The Retreat - - . To retire.
The Drum ceafing - To halt.
Two fort Rolls - - To perform the Flank firing.
The Dragoon March - To open the Battalion. The Grenadier March To form the Column.
The Troop - - - To double Divifions.-
The long Roll - - To form the Square.
The Grenadier March To reduce the Square to Column.
The Preparative - - To make ready and fire.
The General - - To cafe firing.
Two long Rolls - - To bring or to lodge the Colours.

## S e c t. II. Rules for forming the Battalion.

## Note, The following Plan is calculated for a Battalion, confifting of ten Companies.

I. The feveral companies are to repair at an appointed time to the place of exercife, or to the rendezvous of the battalion, each company is there to have a particular place allotted to it, for the affembling of itfelf alone, in order as well to avoid confufion and difturbance by mixing with others, as that the fate of the arms, ammunition, accoutrements, clothing, and every other neceffary, may there be the more conveniently examined and taken an account of.
II. The eldeft Serjeant prefent is to order the men to fall in, forming them three deep, according to theirrefpective ranks, and at open order ; and to call them over by his fize-roll, taking an account of all thofe who are abfent. Next, he is to complete the files, in which he is to include the Corporals, fo as that the eldeft Corporal may be pofted on the right of the front rank, the next junior on the right of the rear rank;and the third Corporal, on the left of the front rank. Then he is to fee that the ranks are well fized and dreffed, that the men appear decent and clean, and provided with all due neceffaries, that the hats or caps are well worn or put on; that the pouches are properly placed, and hang at equal heights, and that the men do ftand proper, erect, and fteady, and carry well their arms. He is next, with the affiftance of the other Serjeants, to examine well the condition of the arms, accoutrements, \&ic. which being effected, then the Serjeants are themfelves to fall in, and take their
pofts on the flanks, according to feniority as the Corporals had done, and on the outfide of them, and to plant their halberds, but when the battalion is formed, then the Serjeants are to be pofted in another manner, as will ther, be fhown. And as to the Drummers, they are to be pofted on the right flank of the company, and on the outtide of the eldeft Serjeant, in a line with the front rank, having their drums braced and flung, but they are otherwife to be pofted when the company is drawn up in battalion, which will then be directed. The infpection of the company being thus finifhed, and all cther matters being carefully adjufted, then the Serjeant is to make a true report in writing of alldeficiencies and irregularities to the Lieutenant or Enfign, who is to make the review, after which, he is to conduct and attend him to the company.
III. The Lieutenant or Enfign who is to make this review, is, on his approach to the company, firft to falute his men by taking off his hat to them, that they may on their part, by feeing in what degree of refpect they are held, conceive the higher opinion of themfelves, and thence be induced to behave, on all occafions, with a becoming propriety. Such like ceremonies as thefe never fail of a due return, for men will always reverence the man the more, who does not overlook them, on account of their misfortune or low condition of life; as they will, on the pther hand, fecretly refent an haughty neglect of them, and will long for an opportunity to gratify their pique and difguft at fuch treatment. This compliment being paid, he is next to proceed to an examination of the feveral particulars of this review, ordering a Serjeant with pen, ink, and paper to attend him, in order to take an account of whatever he flall obferve is amifs or out
of order. He is, at the fame time, to carry with him in his hand, his Serjeant's report, that he may, by referring to it, fee the more readily, whether it tallies with his own obfervations, and how far his Serjeant has acquitted himfelf; and fhould he, on infpection, find it erroneons, and either the effect of neglect, or calculated to fcreen a delinquent, (as is too often the cafe, and make his officer the detector of faults, and by that means fling the odium of feverity upon him,) then he is, on any difcovery of that kind, or the leaft appearancc of fuch mifconduct, to have the Serjeant tried and punifhed with feverity for his offence. For as a corps of good Serjeants may, with great juftice and propriety, be termed the very foul of a regiment, it is the more to be lamented, that the above rule is not better obferved, fince it would infallibly prove the moft effectual means to make them diligent and alert in acquitting themfeives. I recommend this method the more ftrenuoully, having myfelf tried the effect of it, and found it to furpafs my higheft expectations.
IV. The reviewing officer having finifhed his own infpections, and made a report to his Captain, then the Captain is, with his Lieutenant and Enfign, to pof themfelves at the head of the company in the following order, holding their fpontoons planted. The Captain is to be on the right, the Lieutenant on the left, and the Enfign in the centre. They are to ftand on the fame line, and at three paces advanced before the front rank, the Captain and Lieutenant placing themfelves oppofite to the third file of their refpective flanks. The company is to be told off into two divifions; and on the fignal being given by the Major for forming the battalion, which is by beating, To Arnis, the Captain is to order his company to march, himfelf leading the firft divifion, the Enfign the fecond, and
the Lieutenant bringing up the rear, carrying their fpontoons underhand. The Drummers are then to fall in between the front and centre ranks of the firft or leading divifion, and to beat the march. The Serjeants are, on marching off, to /houlder their halberds, letting the ferril-end be uppermoft; and as they proceed on their march, they are to attend their refpective divifions, by taking care that the men carry well their arms, that they ftep together and carry their bodies upright, and that the ranks do march even and ftraight, and at proper diftances from each other. On the arrival of the company at the ground upon which the battalion is to be formed, the Captain is' to draw up fo as that the right file of his company may be a full pace diftant from the left-hand file of the company on his right; and as foon as the firft divifion has halted, the Drummers are to go into the front, and there beat to arms during the time the battalion is forming. The Enfign is to bring up the fecond divifion, drawing it up clofe on the left of the firft, and the Lieutenant is to march up, and take his poft in the front, as before directed. The Captain, Lieutenant and Enfign, are, on drawing up, to face their men, in order to fee that they come properly up to their ground, and that the Serjeants do then proceed to drefs the ranks and alfo the files; and on thus feeing all matters properly adjufted, the Captain is to order his men to fupport their arms, by way of eafing their hands; and then the officers are, either by word of command from the Captain himfelf, or by fignal from the Major, to come to the right about, ftanding in proper order and holding their fpontoons planted. The ranks and files, being dreffed, the Serjeants are to fall in and form a rank or line of themfelves in the rear of the company, at three paces diftance from the rear rank, oppofite to their
officers in front, and then to plant their halberds. The Drummers are, on being ordered to ceafe beating in the front to go into the rear and to form a rank in the rear of their Serjeants, fix paces diftant from them, each Drummer placing himfelf oppofite to the centre fpace between each Serjeant, where they are to repeat occafionally the different fignals (excepting the flam) given by the Major or the commanding officer of the battalion.
V. In forming the battalion, the feveral companies are to be drawn up according to feniority, alternately from right to left, that is, the eldeft company is to be on the rigkt, the next fenior on the left, and fo on till the two youngeft companies are pofted on each fide of the centre. The reafon of which is, that as the defence and prefervation of any body of men drawn up, greatly depend upon the lkill and addrefs of the officers commanding on the flanks; and as it muft be prefumed that a Senior officer is poffeffed of a greater degree of knowledge and experience than his junior, therefore the neceffity for pofting the officers by feniority from right to left, with their companies according to the above method; befides which, there is this farther advantage, that as both officers and men of each company are thus diftinct in themfelves, and of courfe acquainted with each other, the men therefore are more cautious of behaving amifs before one that knows and can eafily detect them, than they would were they commanded by a perfon who is a firanger to, and not fo capable to recollect them, by which means they become not only more fubordinate, but they act with more unanimity and refolution, there being withal, among all diftinct bodies of men, a fipirit of emulation which continually fpurs them on to vie with each other, which they feldom are infipired with swhen they become a mixed body.

For the foregoing reafons then, I fhall confider evèry company not having an acting Captain, whether by eftablifhment or abfence, as a junior company; and therefore thofe companies, whofe Captains are prefent, are to be pofted by feniority from right to left alternately of the battalion, efpecially on fervice. But as the two centre companies have more immediately the charge of the colours, and as that fituation is efteemed another poft of honour ; the Colonel's company is therefore in preference to be pofted on the right, and the, Lieutenant-Colonel's on the left of the centre where the colours are ftationed.

By the above difpofition it appears that I do not fubdivide the grenadiers according to cuftom, in order to cover the flanks of the battalion ; and my reafon for which is, that it is in my opinion a very bad practice, for it is evident, that a divifion or feparation of the officers and men muft not only weaken the whole as well as the parts, but be of infufficient weight for the places at which they are pofted ;---always preferring fervice to parade.
VI. The companies being thus drawn up, and the Captains, Lieutenants and Enfigns pofted in the front of the battallion, or at the head of their refpective companies, as beforc directed, the Colonel is then to take his poft at the head of the battalion, and oppofite to the centre of it, at the diftance of five paces advanced before the line of officers. The LieutenantColonel is likewife to poft himfelf three paces to the right of the Colonel, and two retired from him, or three advanced before the line of officers, each holding his fpontoon planted. The Major is to be mounted on horfeback, for the more expeditious means of executing or difpaiching the orders of the Colonel, and for correcting the more readily whatever he may him-
felf fee amifs. He is to poft himfe!f oppofite to the Colonel in the front, and to face the battalion, with his fword drawn: his diftance from the battalion is to be fuch, as that his fituation from either flank may be equal to the extent of the battalion ; he is there to exercife the battalion, having the Drum Major to attend him, to make the neceffary fignals. But when the battalion is to be reviewed by a general officer, he is, on having given the word of command to the battalion, viz. prefent your arms, the ufual falute on receiving fuch General, to take his poft then at the head of the battalion, three paces to the left of the Colonel, and in a line with the Lieutenant Colonel; and after he has made his perfonal falute with his fword, he is to return to his former poft in the front. The Adjutant is alfo to be on horfeback for the purpofe likewife of difpatch, in the duties I flall hereafter point out. He is alfo to have his fword drawn, and to poft himfelf in the rear of the battalion, and oppofite to the Major in front, where he is to fee good order preferved, and to give timely intimations to the men of whatever is intended to be done, having the Serjeant Major to attend and affift him. See the annexed figure.

But when the battalion is only formed for exercife, and not for review, the Colonel is then not to poft himfelf as above directed, but to place himfelf without his fpontoon, clofe to the Major in front, that he may there the more conveniently direct him as he fhall find occafion ; then the Lieutenant Colonel is to fupply his place. by pofting himfelf in his room, at the head of the battalion.
ViI. Matters being thus far regulated and fettled, the colours are next to be fent for, which are to be brought to the battalion by the Enfigns of the Colonei's and Lieutenant Colonel's companies, or by fuch
other Enfigns as fhall be appointed in their room. For this purpofe, the Major is to make the neceffary fignal, being two foort rolls of the drum, on which the Enfigns for the colours are, firft, to recover their fpontoons, face to the right, and march. They are to repair to the grenadier company, and to march in the rear of the line of officers, or between them and the front rank of the battalion. On their arrival at the grenadier company, they are to poft themfelves in the line of officers, at the head of the efcort, or of the left hand divifion of the Grenadiers; and then to face to the front and plant their fpontoons.

This efcort is to be commanded by the firf Lieutenant of Grenadiers, with the appointment of two Serjeants and one Drumnier. One Serjeant is to be pofted on the right of the front rank; and the other on the left of the rear rank, and the Drummer between the front and centre ranks, who is to beat the Grenadier march. The Lieutenant is to poft himfelf three paces advanced before the Enfigns; and on having received his orders from his Captain, and being made acquainted by his Serjeant that the efcort is ready, he is to face about, and to give the following words of command, viz. Efcort, bandle your arms, March.

Note, The Lieutenant is, as before, to carry his fuzee advanced in his left hand, and in the fame man-. ner as the Soldiers do their firelocks, when they are fo ordered. The Enfigns are to carry their fpontoons zunderband or trailed; and the Serjeants their halberds ßouldered.

When the Lieutenant arrives at the place where he is to receive the colours, he is then to give the following words of command, viz. Efcort, balt; at which the drum ceafes, the Enfigns plant their fpontoons, and the Serjeants their halberds, Fix your bayonets;

Skoulder ; and then the Lieutenant is to fix likewife his bayonet. On the colours being brought out and delivered to the Enfign, he is again to fay, by way of faluting the colours, prefent your arms, at which the Drummer is to beat a march, and himfelf to take off his hat or to put his hand to his cap. The colours being thus received and held advanced by the Enfigns, he is to order the drum to ceafe, and then to give the following words of command, viz. Efcort, Jooulder. Advance your arms. . March. On which the Drammer is again to beat the march.

On the arrival of the colours within forty or fifty paces of the battalion, the Major is, by way of caution, or of fixing the attention of the battalion to his orders, to caufe a fhort roll of his drum, which is to be anfwered by all the other Drummers, after which he is to give the following words of command, Battalion bandle your arms. Prefent your arms. After which his own Drummer is to beat the march, which is the fignal for all the other Drummers drawn up, as before directed in the rear of the battalion, to begiri alfo to beat.

The Lieutenant commanding the efcort is to fhape his march fo, as to bring his right flank almoft to join the left of the battalion, and in the fame direction with it. On his approach to which, the Major is again to fay, Battalion, face to the left; and then the Lieutenant is to fay, on bringing up his men to the flank of the battalion, Efcort balt. Faice to the right. March. On which the Major is again to fay, Battalion, face to the right, or to the front. The efcort having faced and marched, the men are to march by files, each rank marching in the middle fpace bet:veen thofe of the battalion, in order that they may the more conveniently join thofe of their refpective company, that is,
the Lieutenant is himfelf to march between the line of officers and the front rank of the battalion, his front rank is to march between the front and centre ranks, the Drummer following and beating, his centre rank is alfo to pafs between the centre and rear ranks, and his rear rank between the rear rank of the battalion and the line of Serjeants. The Enfigns with the colours are to march after each other in the front of the line of officers, keeping at four paces diftant from that line, and as many afunder. Each officer is to falute them as they pafs by him, by taking off his hat, which is to be done in confideration of the high honour and truft they are invefted with, in carrying the colours of their country, and they are, on their part, to acknowledge the attention given them, by taking off their hats in return.

On their approach to the centre of the battalion, they are to incline inwards, fo as to fall into the line of officers, where they are to poft themfelves four paces from cach other, and in the rear of the Colonel, and then to face to the front, and to ftand in proper order, holding the colours advanced, at which the Major is to order the battalion to /boulder.

The Lieutenant of the efcort is, on having returned and joined his company, to give the following words of command, Serjeants and Drummer, to your former polts. Efcort, front. Shoulder. Return your bayonets. Shoulder. $\Lambda$ fter which he is to retura his own bayonet, and face to the front ; and then to go up and make his report to his Captain, and return to his former poft.

Note, Whenever the Grenadiers or any party of them are ordered to fix their bayonets, the officers are alfo to fix theirs at the fame time, and likewife to unfix with thegm.

MILITARY DISCIPLINE. 227


## SECT. III. Rules for telling off the Battalion,

 and for pofing the Officers, both at Exercife and for Action.I. Each company is to be kept feparate and undivided, and to be held a diftinct divifion in itfelf; and therefore, the word divifion, and the word company, are here to be regarded as fynonymous terms; and as the battalion is to confift, of ten companies, including the grenadiers, each company is to be told off and confidered as a diftinct platoon in itfelf, which will of courfe make ten in the whole.

In the telling off a battalion into platoons for firing, two extremes ought carefully to be avoided, viz. that it be not into fo great a number as will caufe a fufpenfion of fire, nor into fo few as will create hurry, confufion, and inaccuracy. When the number of platoons are too many, that which had at firft began the fire will be for fome confiderable time loaded and ready, before it will come to its turn to fire again in fucceffion. Here then lies a manifeft error, fince the oftener a platoon can conveniently fire in any given period or order of time, the greater execution it will confequently occafion; and on the other hand, fhould the number of platoons be too few, there will not then be fufficient time for each to load and fire again in due rotation; and by thus ftinting men in point of time, it will only ferve to hurry and confound them, and to render their fire ineffectual. Hence then, upon a view of both extremes, a medium becomes evidently neceffary ; that is, to find out a method that will avoid either extreme, and be fufficient in itfelf. For this reafon I have made choice of the above number of
platoons preferable to any other, having conftantly obferved, that the time which each will take up in priming, loading, and making ready after it has fired, will be fearly equal to the time that the other remaining nine platoons will fpend in firing in their due order of fueceffion, or before it will come to the turn of kim who had at firft fired to fire again.

Next, let the platoons or companies be numbered in fucceffion, from the right to the left of the battalion. The grenadier company is to be No. i, the next 2 ; and fo on to that on the left of all, which is, of courfe, to be No. 10, carefully informing each company with its refpective number. Then all the odd numbers are to make the firff firing, and are to anfiwer each other alternately from right to left ; as thus, 1,9 $--3,7---5$; and then the even numbers, which are to conftitute the fecond firing, are to begin and anfwer one another likewife from left to right; as thus, 10,2---8,4---6; and fo on in fucceffion, round after round, as long as the firing fhall be thought fit to continue.

The reafon for thus telling off the battalion into two firings, and for making the feveral platoons to anfwer each other alternately, is, that each part of the battalion may by that means the better fuftain the other, that is, that the part which is loading, and of courfe defericelefs, may, in the mean time, be protected by that which is loaded or ready to fire.

But as the above method, however fimple in itfelf, cannot in action be perfectly well obferved, on account of the great variety of incidents which frequently occur to prevent it ; and as one of my principal views in writing this treatife, was to endeavour at finding out fuch rules as could be rendered moft practical on fer-
vice, I fhall therefore require no longer an obfervance. of the above method, even at exercife, than only for the firft round, after which, each platoon officer is, on having fired, to go on as ufual with his priming and loading, and to fire again as foon as he is ready, regarding nothing more in the mean time, but the good order of his men, the fituation of the enemy, and the fignal of the drum. For as the time of firing one round is calculated for the time of priming, loading and making ready; and as each platoon will, with one another, prinie and load in equal times, therefore there can never happen that irregularity with which any foldier will be difpleafed ; for though it fhould fall out, that two platoons may, from fome interruption or other, fire together, it matters but little, it being in itfelf fo much the more like action, and of courfe the fitter to convey an idea of fervice, and to habituate men to it betimes; yet even this fmall incorrectne?s is infinitely preferable to to our prefent abominable and unfoldier-like practice, viz. of an officer's peeping, watching, and hurrying his men, that he may fire again in his precife turn. By this means his attention is diverted from his platoon, the moft meterial confideration; he becomes perplexed himfelf, and his men, by the want of due infpection, tall into irregularity and confufion ; and to this I chiefly attribute the caufe of that immenfe diforder to which a battalion is ever fubject in action, for the officer in endeavouring to obferve the forms he has ever been inftructed in and accuftomed to, and finding them impracticable, and having then, no other refource or guide to conduct him, confufion of courfe muft ever be the confequence. In fhort, the only beauty and good order which I fhall efteem in firing, are to lock well $u p$, to come to a cool prefent, and to wait with paticnce for the word of command.
II. The

## MILITARY DISCIPLINE. 23 I

II. The battalion being thus told off, and each platoon informed with its due order of firing, the Major is then to give the following words of command.

## Officers, take your Pofts of Action.

Direction.
Each officer is to recover his fpontoon, and the whole to go to the right about.

## Officers, March.

## Direction.

The whole line of officers, excepting thofe who are to command platoons, are to march through the intervals of the platoons into the rear, to the diftance of three paces beyond the line of fergeants, or between them and the line of drummers. Thofe officers are to place themfelves oppofite to the middle face between each ferjeant, or directly before the drummers, that they may the more conveniently direct and obferve the behaviour of their men. The Lieutenant Colonel is to march through the centre interval of the battalion into the rear, and to the diftance of twenty paces be= yond the line of drummers; the major is to follow him, and to poft himfelf on his right hand, and the adjutant on his left, each a little retired from him, where they are to be affiftants to him in regulating any diforders which may happen in the rear, and alfo in keeping up the battalion clofe and compact. The colonel is to poft himfelf in the centre interval of the battalion, and in a line with the front rank, having behind him an aid-de-camp to difpatch his orders;
and behind him is to be the drum-major, to make the neceffary fignals. The captains, or officers commanding platoons of the right wing, are to poft themfelves in the intervals on the right of their platoons, and in a line with the front rank, and thofe of the left wing are to do the fame, but with this difference, that they fall in on the left of their refpective platoons. The reafon of which is this, that the officers of both wings may the more conveniently, when they come to turn to their men to command them, have a reciprocal view how matters go towards the centre, and on the flanks of each other, to the end that they may direct their fire accordingly, and fuftain the better that part which may be pufhed or moft attacked.

By this difpofition of the officers, it may be obferved, that they are all in general pofted where they can poffibly be the moft ferviceable, either to command, to controul, or to affift, by which means the battalion will be kept clofe and compact, and the men to their duty. The colours, which before had fettered and weakened the battalion, now add ftrength and freedom to it, being placed in the rear in the line of officers, where they are not only fufficiently confpicuous, and equally or more fecure, but the officers who carry thiem are left in a condition to be occafionally affifting, in keeping up the battalion, and in preferving good order in the rear of it ; and with this further advantage, that as there is now no referve as before for the colours, the whole of courfe engages, and by that means the centre of the battalion becomes fo much the ftronger, and of courfe the poft of commanding officer rendered more fecure and unmolefted.

But as the above difpofition is calculated for fervice, and for pofting the officers where they can beft fuperintend

## MILETARYDISCIPEINE. 333

intend and direct their men, and as the battalion is now at exercife, the Major is therefore to remain at his former poft of exercife in the front, with the commanding officer near him, to direct him as he fhall think fit and fee occafion.

## Officers, front.

## Direction.

The officers are all to come to the right about, and to plant their fpontoons, excepting the officers commanding platoons, who are to carry their fpontoons advanced, and inftead of coming to the right about, are only to turn to their men, that they may the better direct and obferve their behaviour.

But when the line is ordered to advance, thofe offcers commanding the platoons are then to head their platoons, by advancing four paces before them, and to carry their fpontoons trailed or under hand. 'And in order to keep their intervals open at the fame time ready for them to fall in again when they come to engage, each officer is to call up a fergeant out of the rear to preferve that interval till he returns, and then thofe ferjeants are to fall back to their former pofts.

My reafon for the above difpofition is' this: In the firft place it ferves to animate the men, by feeing their officers advancing before them, and leading them on intrepidly to action. Next, it ferves to keep the men in order, and reftrain them to the proper moment. And laftly, it is the only expedient to make the line advance even and in good order. The fignal for this operation is, the drum's beating a march; and on the drum's ceafing, and beating a preparative, the officers are to fall in as above directed.


## MILITARY DISCIPLINE. 235

Signals.
Words of Command.

1. Battalion, take care to perform Sort Roll. your parade exercise.

Note. Though all folders mut at frt learn their exercife in fall squads by word of command, yet when they afterwards come to form in battalion or to join in larger corps, it will be found a very difficult matter to exercife them in that manner, because there are but very few voices which are fo clear and flong in themfelves as to be diftinctly heard, even at a diftance, neceffary to exercire a fingle battalion; and befides which, the very difference of voice in different people will frequently cause no leis a difference in the performance of the exercife. To obviate then thee impediments, it would be bet to exercife the men by beat of drum, fine the found is more uniform, and can be heard at a much greater diftance; and befides this advantage, there is one fill more weighty, and that is, it will naturally oblige folders to reflect more on what they are to do, in order that they may not be detected in a neglect of their duty, by miftaking or doing one thing for another, and punifhed afterwards for that offence, by which means they will in the end come to acquire fuch an habit of ruminating on what they have to do, and of carrying their ideas beyon the prefent moment, as will of course cause them to be altogether attentive, filent and fteady in all their operations. And for there Ggrers reasons

Reference.
c. iii. s. 2 .
W. G. I.
reafons I fhall prefer fignals by the drum, after troops are properly grounded and well inftructed, to any oral delivery whatever, fince no voice, however good, can be near fo efficacious, and more efpecially in time of action, to which great end all foldiers thould be carefully and judicioufly trained.

Note; Between each fignal, there is to be a paufe or ceffation, in order that the men may the better diftinguifh the dif-: ferent beatings, and have the more time to recollect them. felves.

Note, In all operations, the officers and ferjeants are conftantly to proceed and keep with their refpective divifions, as are the drummers, except otherwife difpofed.

Note, The following letters are characters of abbreviation, which are to be remembered, viz. c. ftands for chapter, s. for fection, w. c. for word of command, a. for article, and r. for rule.

Flam
Flam
Flam
Flam
Flam
Flam
Flam
Hlam
Flam

2 Recover your mufkets 2d
3 Reft your mufkets
4 Order your mulkets
5 Ground your mufkets
6 Take up your mukets 6th
7 Reft your mufkets $\quad 7$ th
8 Shoulder your mufkets 8th
9 Secure your muufkets 9th
roth

Signals.
Flam
Flam
Flam
Flam
Flam
Flam
Flam
Flam
Flam
Flam
Flam
Flam
Flam
Flam
Flam
Flam
Flam
Flam
Flam
Short Roll
Flam
Flam
Flam
Flam
Flam

Short Roll
Flam
Tan

Words of Command

- Referenc.

II Fix your bayonets 1 th
12 Shoulder your mu/kets 12th
13 Prefent your armus I3 th
14 Face to the right I4 1 th
15 Face to the right $15^{\text {th }}$
16 Face to the right-about 16th
17 Face to the left 17 th
18 Face to the left 18 th
19 Face to the left-about 19th
20 Shoulder your mulkets 20th
2 i Charge your bayonets 2 Ift
22 Pufh your bayonets 22d
23 Recover your bayonets 23d
24 Shoulder your mukkets 24 th
25 Advance your mulkets $25^{\text {th }}$
26 Shoulder your muflets 26 th
27 Return your bayonets $\quad 27$ th
28 Shoulder jour mufhets $\quad 28$ th
29 Support your mulkets 29th
The Field Exercife.
30 Battalion take care to perfrom jour feld exercife
$3^{1}$ Handle jour mufkets
$3_{2}$ Fix your bayoncts
30th
33 Shoulder your mulkets
IIth
34 Advance your mufkets c. ii.s.3.w.c. I. bc.

Signals.
Words of Command.
$3^{8}$ Battalion, by files, prepare to take other ground
39 Battalion.: Take ground to the right
40 Battalion. March.
41 Battalion. Halt.
42 Battalion. Front.
43 Battalion. Take Ground to the left.
44 Battalion. March.
45 Battalion. Halt.
46 Battalion. Front.
47 Battalion. Prepare to advance.
The March. 48 Battalion. Advance to the Charge.
Note, The Colonel and

Drum ceases. 49 Battalion. Halt,-ibid.
Preparative. 50 Battalion. Make ready

Flam
Short Roll.
officers commanding platoons or divifions, are to head their platoons and lead on the battalion, as directed in Chap. V. S. 3. R. 2. W. C. the lat, ec. and fire.
Note, No. 1. or the frt platoon or divifion is to begin the firing, and to be followed by the other platoons in facceffion, as directed in Chap. V. S. R. I ; and after each
has fired, it is to go on with V. S. R. I ; and after each
has fired, it is to go on with its priming and loading, except ordered to the contrary. And the firing is to continue till the General continue till the General
beats, whether, , Sanding, advancing, or retreating.
49 Battalion. Halt,-ibid. by the other platoons in fuc-

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { C.iii.f.3.w.c. } 17 \\
& 16,19,23,24
\end{aligned}
$$

Reference.
C. IV. S. 2. W. C. 2. 3 d 4 th 5 th 6th
th
roth, Ge.

## MILITARY DISCIPLINE.

Words of Command.
Reference.

The March. $5^{1}$ Battalion. Advance on. The quick 52 Battalion. Advance March. quicker.
The Point of 53 Battalion. Charge with War.

Bayonet.

Note, At this fignal the battalion is to rufh out with impetuofity, the fring being fufpended for the time; and as the rear ranks cannot then likewife charge with bayonet, without annoying the leading rank, the front rank only is therefore to ufe the bayonet, the other two ranks remaining a referve, to fuftain occafionally the firt, either with their bayonets or their fire.
Drumceafes. 54 Battalion. Halt.
The Retreat. 55 Battalion. Retreat.
Note, As every retreat does convey no lefs an idea of defeat, than it magnifies the the fuperiority and rage of the enemy, the beft troops therefore will naturally, under thefe furmifes and apprehenfions, feek fafety by flight, except reftrained by the greateft care and moft animating conduct of their officers. This tafk then is, in a great meafure, the province of thofe who are pofted in the rear, they being by their fituation the molt capable of that fervice; but much will nevertheiefs depend upon the
C. III. f. 3. wr.
c. $30,83 \mathrm{I}$.

Signals.
judgment of the commonding officer, in adjusting the order and time of retreat. For this lat purpose, the movement of the Battalion, ought never to be performed with a quicker pace, than what will preferve regularity and good order, and withal fuch as may ferve by the formality of it, as well to difpel the dread arifing from the $o$ peration, as to compel the enemy to observe in his menfares both referve and caus. ton, left a too forward erefumption might fnatch from him the advantage he had jut before gained.
Drumccales. 56 Battalion. Halt.
The March. 57 Battalion. Advance.
Drum ceafes. $5^{8}$ Battalion. Halt.
TheGeneral. 59 Battalion. Cafe firing.
Short Roll. 60 Battalion. Prepare to give your Flank-Firing.
Two Short 61 Battalion, by Divifion,)
Rolls. . half wheel to the right. $\}$ March.
Preparative. 62 Battalion. Make ready and Fire.
Note, Each Platoon is, on having fired, to wheel back to. its former ground, and on being loaded, it is again to wheel out as before.
TheGeneral. 63 Battalion. Cafe firing.
Two short 64 Battalion, by Divifion,? Rolls. half wheel to the left. $\}$ March.
C. IV. S. 2. W. C. 18, and 19.

## MILITARY DISCIPLINE. $24^{1}$

Signals.
Words of Command.
Reference.
Preparative. 65 Battalion. Make ready and Fire.
Note, During the continuance of this firing, both to the right and left as above, the Officers, Serjeants, and Drummers in the Rear, are to remain in their reflective lines.

TheGeneral. 66 Battalion. Cease firing.
Short Roll. 67 "Battalion. Prepare to open at the Centre.
Dragoon 68 Battalion, open at the March.
Short Roll. 69 Battalion. Prepare to
23d, etc. 24th
$25,26,27$, and 28. 29th advance in your open Order. The March. 70 Battalion. Advance. Note, The Enfigns with the Colours, are to wheel, \&c. with their reflective Divifions; the one to the right, the other to the left. And the Colonel is to remain upon his prefent ground in the centre of the great interval or opening, the better to observe what paffes, and to give in confequence, the neceffary orders and directions.
Drumceafes. 7 I Battalion. Halt.
Short Roll. 72 Battalion. Prepare to clog at the Centre.
To Arms. 73 Battalion, close at the Centre. March.
Drum cafes. 74 Divifions, that clofed, 34th dress.

Grenadier

Signals.
Grenadier March.

Words of Command.
76 Battalion, form the Column. March.
Note, As the Column is to be a folid compact body, and confequently unweildly in it-felf,- it ought thercfore to have as few encumbrances, and interftices left in it as poffible. For which reaion the Drummers are now to be pofted in the rear, or oppofite to the fide attacking or attacked, and drawn up in ranks by themfelves, excepting the Signal Drummer, who is always to attend the Colonel or commanding officer. The Officers and Serjeants who were pofted in the rear of the Line, are now to make a File of themfelves, between each divifion of tlie Column. The right Enfign with the colours is to be pofted in the interval between the Ift and 2d Granddivifions; as is likewife the left Enfigri, between the 3 d and $4^{\text {th }}$ Grand-divifions, and in a line with the Colonel ; who is pofted, as before, between the 2d and 3 d Granddivifions, and to head the Co Jumn whenever it advances. The Major is to head the grenadiers in all fort of columns, and to lead the attack, and the Licutenant Colonel and Adjutant to bring up the Rear.

Signals.
Words of. Comminand.
Reference.
Drumceafes. 77 Column. Halt.
4 th
The March. $7_{8}$ Column. Advance to the Charge.
$5^{\text {th }}$
Drumceafes. 79 Coliunun. Halt.
Flam So Column. Face to FlankAttack:
$7^{\text {th }}$
Note, The Enfigns with the Colours, are not to face, but are to remain with the two Center-grand-divifions.
The Point of Si Flank-divifions. March War.
and Charge. Eth
be made with the Bayonet only, as before directed in the Line. The right Charge is to be conducted by the Lieutenant Colonel; as is the left, by the Major; and the Adjutant is to remain as. before.

Drum ceafes. 82 Flank divifions. Halt.

Short Roll. $8_{3}$ Battalion. Prepare to red
treat by Column.

The Retreat. $\mathrm{S}_{4}$| Column n. Retreat. |
| :--- |
| Note, The Colonel and | Major are to remain in their prefent ftations; and the Lieutenant Colonel is to lead the Retreat.

Drum ceases. 85 Column. Halt.
Short Roll. 86 Column. Prepare to fortis the Line.
To Arms. 87 Column. Form the Line. Note, The Officers, Serjeants, and Drummers, are now to return to their forer pots in the line.
Drum ceares. 88 Battalion. Halt. $\mathrm{H}_{\mathrm{h}}$

Signals.
Flam

## Words of Command.

89 Battalion. Face to the Front.
Short Roll, go Battalion, by Ranks,? prepare to form the Colump at the Centre.
Grenadier 91 Battalion, form the CoMarch. lunnu. March. the colours do not on this occasion alter their fituation; but are to march clone in the rear of their own divifions: as are aldo the fubaltern Offcert and Serjeants in the rear of theirs, formed into one rank, and the Lieutenant Colonel, Major, and Adjutant with the Drummers, are to be ported as directed in the lat. column.
Drum ceafes. 92. Column. Halt.
To Arms. 93 Column. Form to front Attack. 22d:
Preparative. 94 Battalion. Make ready and fire. ${ }^{\prime} 3^{\prime}{ }^{\prime}$
The Retreat. 95 Battalion. Retreat. by. Column. 24th, \&c.
Drumceafes. 96 Column. Halt.
Short Roll. 97 Ciolunm. Prepare to forme. the Line.
To Arms. ' 98 Columns. Form the Line.
Drum ceases. 99 Battalion. Halt.
Flam 100 Battalion. Face to the Front.
Short Roll. , moI Battalion, by Files). and Ranks, prepare to form the Column at the Centre.
Grenadier 102 Battalion. Form the CoMarch. lumps.

Signals. Words of Command. Reference.
Note, The Enfigns with the colours are to march together clofe in the rear of their own inward fubdivifrons, or of that of No. 5and 6 ; the other, Subaltern Officers and Serjeants are to divide themfelves, fo as that an half of them may likewise be potted to each fubdivifion of their reflective divifions. All the other officers are to be potted as directed in the frt column.
Drum cafes. $\mathrm{IO}_{3}$ Column. Halt.
The March. 104 Column. Advance to the Charge.
Drum ceases. 105 Column, Halt.
To Arms. , 106 Column. Form to front and flank Attacks.
Preparative. 107 Battalion. Make ready and Fire.
Note, As the battalion now forms three fides of a fquare, the charge is to 'be made, as directed in the two lat columns, with refpect to front and flank attacks.
TheGeneral. 108 Battalion. Geafe Firing. Short Roll. 109 Battalion. Prepare is retreat by Golunin.
The Retreat. 110 Column. Retreat.
Drum cafes. in Column. Halt.
Short Roll. 112 Column. Prepare to form the Line.
To Arms. ${ }_{11} 3$ Column. Form the Line. $4^{2 \mathrm{~d}}$
Drum ceases. ${ }^{11} 4$ Battalion. Halt.
Flam 115 Battalion. Face to the Front:

Signals. Words of Command., Short Koll. ' 116 Battalion, hy Divijion, $\left.\begin{array}{c}\text { prefare to form the Collumnu } \\ \text { to the right. }\end{array}\right\}$
Grenadier . 117 Battalion. Form the CoMarch. lumn.

Note, The Enfigns with the colours are to poft themfelves between the $5^{\text {th }}$ and 6th divifions. The Major is to lead the column, pofting himfelf as directed in the other columns. The Colonel is now to place himfelf between the ift and 2d divifions. The Lieutenant Colonel is to bring up the rear, having the Adjutant with $\mathrm{him}_{\mathrm{i}}$; and the Subaltern Officers and Drummers are to march in the rear of their refpective divifions: the Serjeants being now potted on the flanks, the better to attend to the order of march.
Drum ceafes. 118 Column. Halt.
The March.' 119 Column. Marchi
Drum ceafes. 120 Column: Halt.
Short Roil. 12 I Coliumin, by Divifon,? $\therefore$ prepare to form the Line $\}$ to the right.
form, the fignal-drummer is to beat on that flank. And on the divifions wheeling up, all-the officers, \&c. are to fall out and return to their refpective pofts in the line,
paying a regard to their pre: refpective pofts in the line,
paying a regard to their pre: fent front.

Reference.

Note, To whatever flank of the column the line is to - .

## MILITARY DISCIPLINE.- 247

Signals. Words of Comenand.
To Arms. 122 Column. Forint the Line. Drumceafes. 123 Battalion Halt. Short Roll. 124 Battalion, by Divisors,? prepare to nuieel backwards to the right and
form the Column.
125 Battalion, form the Colain.
Note, All the officers, ic. are now to return to their former pots in column:
Drumceafes. 126 Coluninh. Halt.
The March. 127 Column March.
Drum ceafes. 128 Colutizn. Halt.
Short Roll. 129 Column, by Divifinn,? prepare to form the Lime $\}$ to the Left.
To Arms. 130 Column. Form in the Line.
Drum cafes. 131. Battalion. Halt.
Short 'Roll. I32 Battalion, by Dieifion, prepare to wheel backwards to the left, and form the Column.
Grenadier 133 Battalion. Form the CoMarch.
Drum ceafes. 134 Column. Halt.
The March. 135 Column, March.
Drum céafes. is 6 Colamme. Halt.
Short Roll. 137 Column. by Divifion,? prepare to form the Line $\}$ to your Vain.
To Arms. ${ }^{1} 38$ Column. Form the Line.
Drumceafes. 399 Battalion. Halt.
Short Roll. $140^{\circ}$ Battalion, by Divijion,? prepare to retreat by $\left.\mathrm{CO}_{0}-\right\}$ lumen?.

Reference.
5 fit, \& c .
$53^{\text {d }}$

54th, \&c.

Signals.
The March. 144 Column. March. Drum cafes. 145 Column. Halt, Short Roll. ${ }^{1} 46$ Column, from Divifion, prepare to form Grand-
Divijion.
The Troop. 147 Colunin. Form into Grand-divifon.
Drumceafes. 148 Column. Halt.
Short Roll. . 149 Column. Prepare to forint the Square.
Long Roll. 150 Column. Formithe Square. Flam 151 Square. Face outward. Short Roll. 152 Square, by your Front Face, prepare to advance. Note, The Enfigns with the colours are on this occafin to be in the rear of that face to which the Square advances, placing themfelves oppofite to the centre of it. The Field-officers and Adjutank are to be within the Square ; the Colonel to lead the advance, the Lieutenant Colonel the retreat : and all the other officers, \&c. are to be with. their respective divifins.
${ }^{\text {THe March. }} 153$ Square. March.
Drum ceases. 154 Square. Halt.
Flam - 155 Square. Face outward.
Short Roll. ${ }_{156}$ Square, by jour rear Face, prepare to retreat.
The Retreat. 157 Square. Retreat.
Drumceafes. $15^{8}$ Square Halt.
Flam 159 Square. Face outward. Short Roll. 160 Square, by Grand-di-) vision, prepare to reduce to Colum m.
C.IV.S4..wc. 4

Signals.
Grenadier 161 Square. Form the CoMarch. lunik.

Words of Command.

Drum ceafes. 162 Column. Halt.
$\left.\begin{array}{cc}\text { To Arms. } & \begin{array}{c}6_{3} \text { Column, by Grand-di- } \\ \text { vision, to the left wheel } \\ \text { and form the Line. }\end{array}\end{array}\right\}$
$\left.\begin{array}{cc}\text { To Arms. } & \begin{array}{c}6_{3} \text { Column, by Grand-di- } \\ \text { vision, to the left wheel } \\ \text { and form the Line. }\end{array}\end{array}\right\}$
$\left.\begin{array}{cc}\text { To Arms. } & \begin{array}{c}63 \text { Column, by Grand-di- } \\ \text { vision, to the left wheel } \\ \text { and form the Line. }\end{array}\end{array}\right\}$
Drum ceafes. 164 Line. Halt.
Short Roll. ${ }_{165}$ Rear Ranks, prepare to open to whole diffance.

Direction.
The rear ranks, with all the officers, \&c. in the rear, are to go to the right-about.
Dragoon 166 Ranks, open to whole

March. difance. March.

## Direction:

.. The rear rank is to march fix paces, and the centre rank three; and the officers, \&c. are likewife to march fix paces, which will bring them to their former diftances.
Flam
Flam
Flam
Flam

167 Face to the Front.
168 Shoulder your Firelocks.
169 Officers, take your profs in Front. . March.
170 Battalion, support your arms.

Reference.

19th, adc.
(
RULES, MAXIMS, A N D

OBSERVATIONS, F O R THE GOVERNMENT, CONDUCT, A $\mathrm{N} D$
DISCIPLINE O F A N
A R M Y.
-

## PREFACE.

AS a fyitem of propriety in every branch of a man's profeffion, is nothing more than the refult of regulated and eftablifhed principles, laid down either by himfelf or by others, it then invariably follows, that where fuch a guide is wanting, and men are left to impore the dictates of their own caprice, diforder, confufion, ruin, or difguft, muft ever enfue.

This confideration, has led me to offer the following rules, maxims, and obfervations; and though I am confident, how much more complete a treatife of this kind could be rendered by many other officers; yet, when I reflected upon the neceffity of fuch a work, and on the advantages which might from thence accrue to the army, I concluded, that the motive, which influenced me to the attempt, however inadequate the tafk flould prove to my capacity, would, to the candid, fuggeft an apology in my favonr.

The following tract is, in a great meafure, calculated, Firft, to enforce obedience, and to preferve good order. Next, to point out improprieties, that they may be rejected and avoided. And, laftly, to inftruct fome few officers in a better and more punctual difcharge of their duty. And, if what I have fo penned, can contribute to thefe great ends, I fhall account my time not fruitlefsly employed, but well fpent, and fufficiently recompenfed in the fatisfaction it will afford me:

## MORALOBSERVATIONS.

NOTHING but priaciple, can conduet a man through life. 2 Bad habits are more difincult to correct than to prevent. 3 . Bad conduct will ever produce deftructive confequences.
4 One abfurdity or iad action, will ever beget another to fupport it.
5 Thoush you err tu oblige, yet the perfon you fo oblige, will fecretly derpife you.

6 Nothing can jultify the doing a bad or an ungenerous action.
7 A man gains more enemies by partiality, than he make friends.
8 He who is unjult to others, can never be ferved with fidelity and affection.
9 For as much as you will be to others, fo much will they be to you.
ro Men will always act according to the idea they conceive of their own intereft, or of what they owe to themfelves.

II The ungenerous can have no claim to friendhip, nor have they 2 sight to murmur at retaliation.

I2 Where a defire of pleafing, fupplants a regard for juftice, difgrace is ever a confequence.

I3 He who is confcious of his own mifconduct, bates all thofe who know it.

If Too ftrict an attention to ourfelves, often induces us to forget others.

I5 A fordid penury, creates more enemies, than generofity makes friends.
I6 Fie, who is vainly profufe in himfelf, will ever be rapacious on others.
1\% Oeconomy is the parent of greatnefs.
I8 He cannot be called avaritious or felfifh, who is difinterefted.
I He who is the mort frugal, will always be the beft accommodated.
20 He is the mont juft to others, who is juft to himfelf.
$2 r \mathrm{He}$ who can gratify molt, will always be the moft careffed.
22 He eftablifhes a friendhip, who grants willingly, and refufes with concern.

23 There is nothing that deceives people more frequently than their own imaginations.

24 It argues great weaknefs to place a confidence in a bad man.
25 It is prudent and juft to difcredit the man who has once deceived you.

25 He who has been mified to betray a weaknefs, will never pardon the perfon who has impored upon him.

- 27 He can have no claim to confidence, who betrays a juft truft.

28 Nothing places any tranfaction in a more unfavourable point of view, or is more odious in itfelf, than treachery.

29 Thofe muft be fufpected, whofe mifconduct gives room for fufpicion.

30 A declared miftruft, ouly ferves to provoke, but never to reclaim.
31 There is nothing more neceffary to infpire fidelity, than a fhow of confidence.
3. He is the mot dangerous enemy who acts under the appearance of friendlhip.

## A P P E N D I X.

33 He who can proftitute himfelf to injure one man in complaifance to another, is qualified to ferve the vileft purporcs.

34 Nothing fooner betrays an odious difpofition than to infult the weak and defencelefs.

35 There is nothing more incompatible than fite and bravery.
36 Private conduct fhows the internal man.
37 Nothing fooner difcovers the difpofition of a man, than the conduct of his dependents.

38 He who makes no allowance for the defects of others, mult be efteemed a weak as well as a bad man.

39 'The countenance or applaufe of a bad man is ever a difadrantage to him it is given.

40 The friendmip of a difhoneft man is not to be acquired by honeft means.

4 r A bad man covets no other principle in another but the gratification of himfelf.

42 A tyrant admits of no other rule or presedent but his owi will.
43 All tyrants covet to be thought good, and will therefore feek to ruin the man who will not applaud even their blackeft crimes.

44 Tyrants have no principle; that which is matter of difgrace at one time is matter of applaufe at another.

45 Tyrants find a pretext for their oppreffion, in the refentment of thofe they have injured. A tyrant will always jufify the doing of one injury, by the committing of ancther.
46 Nothing is more dreadful than tyranny and power united.
47 Whoever is terrible to others, will ever be afraid of himfelf.
48 Reluctance never accompanies an injurious defign.
49 He who openly wrongs you, will never be your friend.
50 Vengeance never lofes fight of injuftice.
${ }_{51}$ He who is always feared, mult be ever hated.
52 A continued dread, provokes men to defperate meafures.
53 Injuries ftimulate men to do thofe things, which otherwife they would not attempt.

54 The more patient a man bears an injury, the more violent he becomes when he refents.

55 He who provokes, does ever infigatc.
56 The tongue may fonietimes be bridled, but the mind can fuffer no reftraint.

57 He who countenances or connives at an injury, tolerates the extenfion of it to himfelf and others.

58 Calumny is the weapon of a coward, and his fhicld the feerecy of others.

59 Truth can be no defamation, it being the inftrument of juftice.
60 Falfe informers fould be branded with the fame difgrace which they intended for thofe they fought to injure.

6r Silence in confequence of cenfure, implies guilt, not contempt.
62 He is little lefs than abandoned, who is regardlefs of fame.
63 He is the moft contemptible of beings," who lias not fpirit to fupport the juftice of his own caufe.

64 The good conduct of a man is ever a difgrace to his enemies.
65 Nothing affords a truer fatisfaction than the reflection of having done a laudable action.

66 The firf eftimation of a man arifes from himiclf.
67 Merit is the greateft ornament of dignity.
68 No man can be degraded but by himfelf.

89 The conduct of one man is a lefforl of inftruction to another.
70 He who boaft his own merit, pays himfelf, and acquits others of their obligations to him.
7 I He who alfociates with another, participates of his character.
72 Thofe will ever combine, whofe condition and circumftances are fimi'ar.

73 The individuals of every minority will always league and combine for their mutual fupport.
74 Hc who fercens a delinquent, is an accomplice of his crimes.
75 He infults jufice who countenances a delinquent.
76 Ingratitude is the filth of a bafe mind.
77 There can ie no ingratitudc in refuling to do a bad or a difhonourable action.

78 No gratitude can be due upon the reward of having done a bad action.
79. An obligation is hateful when inattention is a coufequence.

80' A greater acknowiedgement ćannot be macce to a gencrous friend, than to appear deferving of his friendfrip.

8 I The more eminent a man is, the more is expeeted from him.
82 The more confpicuous the man, the greater the object of envy and detraction.

83 No one will admire that virtue in another, who is incapable of enjoying ${ }^{-1 t}$ himfelf.

84 No minds are more fufceptible of envy than thofe whofe merit is below their birth and dignity.

85 Nothing expofes a man more to ridicule and infult than a fupercilious air of fuperiority.

85 Dignity can never be fupportce? by infolence.
$9_{7} \mathrm{He}$ deceives himfelf, who fancies a kindnefs is due to him on account only of his iuperior condition.

88 Pride and meaunefs are ever in feparable.
89 A fupercilious man is ever his own companion.
go He courts contempt, who lays himfelf open to indignity and infult.
9r No refentment makes a more durable impreffion than that of contempt.

92 A liberiy to offend is the privilege of no man.
93 The rieatcit teft of true bravery is a fear to offend.
94 the who offers an infult bargains for a return.
95 Where the injured has fpirit to demand fatisfaction, ruin or difgrace mult attend the agcreffor.

95 An injury is cver new while the effect is felt, or till reparation be made.

97 Every conceffion is due to the injured. '
$9^{8}$ He renders himfelf odious, who quarrels with another for refenting an injury done him.

99 In all quarrels only one party can be culpable, and that is the asgreftor.

IOO Nothing indicates magnanimity more than generofity to acknowleige an error.

- IOI Civility is the cheapent, and yet the moft-profitable traffic.

102 There is no characier more amiable than that of a mediator.
103 Serviity to a fuperior is ever accompanied with the like infolence to an inferior.
Iof Tine oppofite to oftertation is ever the truc character.
IO5 Nothing
ro5 Nothing argues or proclaims a greater confcioufrefs of infignificance, than fervility.
rón Servility and magnanimity aré evér incompatible.
107 Pride and infolence admit of no diftinction bctween fervility and refpect.

108 Nothing can be diffinguifhed lefs by a weak underftanding, or can operate more powerfully upon it than fervility.

109 When the intelicets are weak and the paffions flrong, nothing is more pernicious than fervile adulation.

## S E C T. II.

## Of COURAGE and TIMIDITY.

## I

 'C OURAGE is the happy refult of contitution and reflection. a military perfon.
3 He is the greateft hero who triumphs over himfelf.
4 Spirit and zeal give life to the fervice.
5 There can be no true valour, where there is not public fpirit.
6 The more confident a man is of his own power and capacity, with fo much the greater refolution he will ant.

7 Confidence of fucceifs begets refolution.
8 The more that private mencan be brought to hold their enemy in eontempt, the more refolute they become.

9 Knowledge of fupport re-animates the man.
10 Nothing is to be omitted which can invigorate men to a difcharge of their duty.
II No dificulty feems invincible to the refolute.
12 Motion gives fpirit as well as force.
13 That which ferves to encourage one man; will ferve to intimidate his epponentat the fame time.

14 Nothing makes a man more vigilant than the apprehenfion of danger.

Is All men will thun danger where there is no incentive.
16 Nothing propagates fear more than darknefs and furprize.
37 Of all the fenfes, none more effectually difturbs the mind, agitates the paffions, and fubverts the underfancing, than that of the hearing.

I\% The beft troops, ifthot properly prepared and difpofed, are liahle to panics.

19 Nothing can difhearten a man more, than a knowledge or fuppofition of his not being upon equal terms with his adverfary.

## S E C T. III.

## - Of SUBORDINATION.

${ }^{2}$HERE cannot be a greater recommendation to any employment, than a difpofition devoted to obedience.
2 No authority can exift, where there is not a proper fubmiffion.
3 He cannot command whofe confequences is violated.
4 The private and the public man munt ever be diftinguifhed.
5 No Othicer call well be obeyed who is not well refpected.

6 The merit of all actions is ever to be given to him in command.
3 No inferior mult affect an independance of his fuperior.
8 Obedience is ever recominended by zeal and attention.
9 Where there is zeal; there can feidom reft any imputation to a man's difadvantage.

Io Never confult with another in point of ohedience.
II No inferior muft alier what his fuperior directs to be obferved.
12 Obedience fuffers no reflection.
$I_{3}$ Orders mult be obeyed, though they may be remonfrated ajainf in a proper way if time will admit.

I4 Ignorance of an order is no excufe.
15 A fubfequent order fuperfedes a former.
so The fenior prefent is the man in immediate command.
17 Command can never expire, while feniority exifts.
I8 Every inferior muft govern himelf by the orders or example of him in command.
19 Every inferior muft be an affifant to his fuperior.
20 Every inferior mult give immediate information to his fuperior, of whatever he hears or efteems is effential to the fervice.
$2 I$ No report can be too fatisfactory; where a report is made to an officer of a different corps, the fignature munt have the addition of rank and regiment annexed to it.
.22 Never enter intoany combination a aainft him in command.
23 In all confpiracies, he is ever held to be a principal, who is of the greateft rank or confequence.

24 There is no danger fo great as that of not accuitting yourfelf.

## SECT. IV.

## Of the PRINCIPLES of DISCIPLINE.

I $T \mathrm{HE}$ mind mult be prepared before it can receive.
2 The mind acts with the greateft vigour, when confined to a particular object.

- 3 Every officer mult have his poft affigned or declared.

4 Every officer muft be pofted where he can be moft ferviceable.
5 Every confinement is a reftriction.
6 Every officer is to be in a capacity to infeect, direct, and fee things done.
7 Whare things are not difling in themfelves, there will always be confufion.
8 Nothing is military which is in itfelf either telious or inconvenient.
9 Every object operates beft, which is lcaft obftructed or incommoded.
10 Whatever is conftrained is irkione ard ungraceful. .
II Strength fuffers by conftraint.
12 That pofition is bett in which a man can moft conveniently defend himfelf and annoy his enemy. .
${ }^{3} 3$ That difpofition is beft, where each part fuftains the other.
It He fuffers molt, who is moft expofed.
15 The more compact any body is in itfelf, the more impenetrable it becomes.

16 The more fimple and comprehenfive any operation is, the better effer it will produce.

I7 The lefs complex any operation is, the fooner it will be learned and the more accurate will be the performance of it.
18 Fvery operation receives a merit from its concifenefs; every action foould have a motive, and none to precede command.

I9 The lefs the pace, whetlier of time or diftance, the more accurate will be the judgment of it.

20 Every object fands the weaker, by how much its bafe is lefs than its greatef diameter.

25 The more any objeet is fupported, the firmer it refts.
22 No independent object can futtainitfelf out of the line of gravity.
23 No dipendertio object can fuftain itêelf.
24 All objects tend to a perpendicular bearing.
25 Whaterer is perpendicular can only reft upon its own bafe.
26 The nearer any object approaches to a perpendicular, the more it selts upen its own bafe.

27 All cijects placed in the fame line of direction from the point of view, hide or cover each other.

20 If an object is fo placed as to be in a line with two others, the whole will then be in one and the fame direction.
29 The neaier that the fide of any polygen is to the centre of that fisule, the leis will that fide be.

30 Every fgure which carries in its lines its own meafurement with it, w:iii be fooneft deicribed, and leaft liable to crror.
$3^{I}$ The fooner any figure can be defcribed, the more convenient it becomes.

32 Figures are only ufeful by their application.
33 If right lines are not patallel, they will either converge or diverge.
34 The fhorter any radius is, the fooner its circle will be defcribed.
35 There can be so balance, where there is not a counteracting power.
36 The longer any lever is, the greater its power.
37 The nearer any power approaches the fulcrum of a lever, the more is its force diminifhed.
$3^{8}$ Every fuicrum faftains the whole force of motion contained in each arm of its lever.

39 The force of motion in the arm of any lever is compounded of its length and the quantity of matter acting upon it.

40 The force of motion is proportioned to its velocity in the fame body.

## S E C T. V

## Of COMMAND.

'THERE is no knowledge fo ufeful as that of the human heart: 2 There is nothing more neceflary for the fupport of fubordination than a perfect knowledge of what is pleafing or difgufful.

3 Whatever is ridiculous or abfurd forfeits its importance.
4 Nothing renders things fooner difgufful, than an unneceffary ufe and application of them.

5 Thofe, who want capacity for effentials, will ever adopt trifles.
6 Affability alone contributes more to the advantage of the fervice, than even judgmeat without it.

7 All officers are to make tinemfelves an example of good order and difcipline to all thofe fubordinate to them.
8 All officers fhould ftudy to acquire the affecion, confidence, and eftecm of thofe fubordinate to them.
9 It is an unhappy circumfance to be feared for being juft, and beloved for being good.
co All officers are mutually to fupport the confequence of each other.
II There is nothing more neceffary to obferve, and yet more difficult to effect, than an equal degree of authority and indulgence.
$\bar{I}_{2}$ Indulgence fhouid be cautioufly granted, left it be made a precedent, and afterwards claimed as a privilege.
$x_{3}$ There is nothing more pernicious in its confequence, than an injudicious conceffion.

If He, who properly divides his cares and fundions, makes his authority nore active, extenfive, and decifive.

15 All events, whether good or bad, genera!ly depend upon the degree of undertanding in the commanding officer.
$x 6$ No officer can well acquit himfcli, who is ignorant of the duty of chofe fubordinate to him.
I7 No proficience can be acquired, where application is wanting.
18 He , who is ignorant himfelf, can never inftruct others.
19 Every man is ignorant before he is inttructed.
20 Thofe men acquit themifelves beft, who are moft inftructed.
21 The lefs complex any operation is, the fonliti it will be learned, sind the more accurate will be the performance of $i t$.

22 That difcipline is beft, which is mon calculated for times and circumftances.
23 'The inore fimple and comprehenfive any dicipline is, the better effect it will produce.

24 Where the principles are not good, the fyftem muft be bad.
25 A proficience in any fcience depends upon a perfect knowledge of its rudiments.

26 The fooner any operation is performed, the more time is acquired for other purpofes.

27 Dirpatch is the foul of action.
28 That theory is beft which approaches the neareft to practice,
29 Where there is not method, there mult always be confufion.
30 Where things are diftinct in themfelves, there can be no confufion:
3 Whatever is regular is always beft.
32 The character of the officer is often defribed in the conduct of the soldier.

33 Very little more is requifite to be knowr of an officer's capacity, than to be informed how he has employed his time.

34 Avoid whatever may reduce thofe fubordinate to you to acts of difobedience or difrefpect.

35 There is nothing more difficult, than to refpect the man who renders himfelf an object of contempt.

36 The more an officer's conduct borders on good fenfe, the greater deference will be paid to his commands.
37 No government can be fupported by caprice.
$3^{8} \mathrm{He}$ forfeits his authority who does not fupport with fpirit his own confequence.

39 There is nothing more hurtful to authority than too intimate an intercourfe with inferiors.
40 Juftice and power can only fupport each other.
4r Nothing is to difcourage a man in the difcharge of whatever is neceflary and proper.
42 He who is brave and generous will fufer nothing to come in competition with his duty, or with what he owes to himfelf.

43 Whatever you determine upon that is juft, let it be profecuted with vigour and refolution.

44 There is nothing fo difficult to reslaim, as authority once parted with.
45 Command admits of no equality.
46 No officer can furrender the privilege of his rank.
47 No man can have any other authority than what is prefribed by law.

48 He that does what he will, frequently does what he ought not,
49 All power is calculated for public good.
50 No authority can extend to the doing an injuftice.
51 Nothing rencers authority more odious than fpite and malice.
53 There cannot be a greater reflection upon the conduct of an officer, than when good men dread to be under his command.

54 Authority is an index of the man.
55 He is the beft officer who is the moft ferviceable.
56 Every officer is to infpett, direft, and fee things done.
57 Superiority in offce is only the fuperintendance of it.
53 Nothing is beneath an oficer to know or to do, which can contribute to the good of the fervice.

59 Nothing is inconfiderable which is neceffary to be done.
60 The good of the fervice is to have the preference of all other confiderations.

61 Cafes of neceffity have rules peculiar to themfelves, though oppofite at other times to the difcipline of the fervice.
62 Let no jealoufy or difguft induce you to hurt the ferrice.
63 In matters of moment never rely on your own opinion, but feek the advice of others.
$6_{4}$ It is no refection upon the underfanding of a fuperior to be informed by his inferior, but it is a very great one, fhould he difcourage fuch information.
65 Let advice be eftimated as it is, but not as from whence it comes.
66 No man will advife where he does not regard.
67 He acts with the greateft caution, who thinks his conduct is expofed to view.

68 Never delay the doing of that which the prefent time requires to be done. No work is finifhed while fomething remains to be done.

69 He can never be much burdened with bufinefs, who tranfacts it as it occurs.

70 He who is the moft expeditious, acquires time for other purpofes.
II Revolve well on whatever you have to do.
72 He repents moft, who deliberates leaft.
73 He , who can temporife moft, accomplifhes his purpofes with the furer fuccefs.

74 He who is ton deliberate frequently lofes the opportunity, which he that is too hafty never waits to gain.

75 He who is prepared can never be diftreffed.
96 Refolution and perfeverance conquer moft difficulties.
77 He , who accufoms himfelf to overlook fmall afiairs, will in time havituate himfelf to neglect matters of the greateft importance.
78 Punctuality is the offspring of habit.
79 Appearance is that index which conveys an idea of what men are in thenfelves beft calcuiated for.

So That which conftitutes the great character, is an happy union of genius and profeffion.

8I Nothing cramps more the genius, or contracts more the ideas, than too minute an attention to fmall objects.

82 Iffue no order beforc there is a neceffity, no before its confequence is well weighed.
83 An order is a law which rnuff not be violated, even by him that makes it.
84 Nothing is more hurtful to the importance of authority, than the neceffity of sepealing what imprudence has effected.
85 He asgravates an offence, who perfeveres in an error.
86 Every order mult figrify the authority by which it is given, otherwife it is no order, but a recommendation or a defire,
87 Whaterer ordes you fhall have occafion to iflue, let it be always delivered in the ftile and language of a gentleman and a foldier.
. 88 That rule ororder is beft, which is the moff fimple and comprehenfive in itielf.
89 No man call obey before he can comprehend.
90 Whocver is appointed for any duty or fervice, let him be amply provided with all neceffary infructions.
gr Never fuffer any order you flall : ifue to be treated with the leaft inattention.
$\$ 2$ The inof judicions order will lofe its efficacy, where all alike will not fupport and enforce it.
23 A void the difcovery of an offence, where authority can have no efsect.

94 Juffice is the parent of good order.
95 A man renders that fubmiffion to juftice and moderation, which force or violence could never extort from him.

96 Actions founded upon pique or prejudice too often become pernicions preccuents.

97 No precedent can juftify an improper conduct. All cuftoms which are unjuft in themfelves, however made venerable by time, fhould never be fuffered to continue.

98 Where reafon does not juftify, cuftom is a poor pretence.
99 Remove.all caures of murmur and difcontent.
100 He escites mutiny, whofe mifonduct provokes men to reject all. order and obedience.
-Ior No difrefpect or breach of difcipline can be comprehended in a defire of juftice.

102 No man is to be treated with particularity.
103 Never feem to cenfinte or to find fault with an officer in the prefence or hearing of one fubordinate to him.

104 The greater the refpect fhown to an inferior officer, the greater deference will be paid to his authority.

IO5 Nevcr countenance an inferior in a difrefpetful behaviour to his fuperior.
ro6 He , who does not difcountenance, doth always encourage.
107 Ife promotes difcorl, who countenances party.
:08 Whatever complaint or difpute comes before you, which you cannot redrefs, or examine well into yourfelf, let the confideration of it be referred to a board of enquiry.
rog That duty is the beft performed, which is the mot coritroled.
1 Io Nothing can juntify a neçleft of duty.
III No fuperior mult do the duty of his inferior.

II2 Ali men muft be countenanced and fupported in the execution of their duty.
$1 \pm 3$ He who infults another upon his duty, infults the office, but not the man.

114 Where different corps continue in the fame place, all to have equal duty and like ufage.
II5 Wilful mifconduet, not errors in judgment, can only be conftrued a crime.

116 Cenfure no man before you fhall hear his defence.
II7 He who is not willing to hear a juftification, will ever be defirous to condemn.
ix In all controverfies, whatever makes for one party makes againft the other at the fame time.

II9 Let punihment or refentment be like the law ; not to gratify revenge, but to deter offenders.
$1 z 0$ Let punifhment be as much as poffible the cffect of a judicial procefs.

121 The greater the example, the more powerful the influence.
122 It is a barbarity to punih others, for thofe crimes which we ourfelves exemplify.

123 Let crimes he confidered as they are, but not according to the rank of the criminal.

I24 Let no mifconduct efcape with impunity, nor any merit go unrewarded.

125 An injudicious lenity is the greateft cruclty.
126 The putting up with one offence, is the granting a licence for another.

127 Like caufes will ever produce like effects.
128 Men are fooner reclaimed by lenity than feverity.
129 There can be no faithful foldiers who are too much accuftomed to tortures and punithments.
$r_{j} 0$ Omit nothing to preferve a foldier's firit, but ufe all means to reftrain his licentioufnefs.
$\mathrm{I}_{3 I}$ Where reafon has not time to exert herfelf, the paffions will ever predominate.
I 32 There is nothing more effential than a minute attention to the abilities and capacities of men, and to employ them according to their fereral talents.

I33 'I he more experienced the inferior, the greater adrantage will refult to the furerior.
I 34 No commander can be too nice in his choice of men, fince his own reputation depends fo much upon their conduct.
135 Nothing fooner qualifies an inferior, than the underftanding of his fuperior.

I 36 When a worthlefs perfon is advanced, it is ever to the difgrace of him who recommends or appoints him.

I 37 He who is not worthy of preferment, is not fit to ferve.
${ }_{3} 33$ Take all opportunities to inculcate and excite emulation.
139 It argues depravity, where officers are not jealons of the dignity of their refpective corps.

I40 Be always an advocate for thofe under your conmand.
I4I Let nothing tempt you to conceal the merit of another.
142 The merit of an action, is not to be confidered by the degree of the perfon who performs it.
$1 \$ 3$ Where praife is due, let it be crer given.
I4 He

## A P P E N D I X.

144 He wings his fame, who Thares his glor $\mathrm{ta}_{\text {with }}$ with fe concerned.
145 Great minds are ever pleafed with the excellencies of others, but barren faculties are crer provoked at them. Merit gives birth to envy, but it is merit alone that muft overcome and deftroy it.
$x_{46} \mathrm{He}$ is a foe to merit, who arrogates to himfelf the genius of another.
$I_{47}$ All men are pleafed with regulation and infruction, but no man can endure the difgrace of being the inftrument of another's caprice.
$1_{4} \mathrm{~S}$. Nothing fhould be introduced without the fanction of authority.
149 Evciy eftablifhment merits the highert deference.'
$x_{50}$ Every improvement muft be held prefumptive, till approved by proper authority.

I5I Every alteration fhould carry with it a teftimony of improve: ment.
152 Never change one infinnificant form for another.
153. That cannot be called an improvement which is not worthy of the alteration.
${ }^{5} 4 \mathrm{~L}$ Let that which is moft commodious be aiways preferred.
155 Obferve form, where it does not clafh with effentials.
156 Nothing engages the attention more than formality.
157 No officer can be in command, who is nut at his poff.
158 It is a greater honour to command, than to be commanded:
159 When different corps meet, the fenior officer commands the whoie.

## S E C T. VI.

Of INTELLIGENCE.
I T all times endeavour to employ the man who can give you the beft information.
2 Nothing contributes more to the fuccefs of an enterprize, than good intelligence.

3 It is next to conqueft to know the defigns and difpofition of the enemy.

4 Neglect no opportunity to acquire a competent knowledge of the country wherein you are to fcree, and of the force that is to oppofe you.
5 There can be no greater mifconduct than parfimony to thofe who can pomote your defigns, or can furnith you with good intelligence.

6 There are no tranfactions more fucceffful and advantageous, than thofe brought about by pecuniary applications.
7 Never difcover the man you employ to procurc you information.
8 No information can equal obfervation.

## S E C T. VII.

## of POSTS.

THERE you are to advance through a defile, occupy by times its outlet.
2 Never attempt to pafs a river, bcfore the country on the oppofite Gede is well reconnoitred.

3 When a river is to be paffed in the prefence of the eneny, let it be at the point of that elbow the neareft to you.
4 Shun the place where you cannot be fully and conveniently fupplied with every neceffary.

5 Never poft yourfelf within the reach of the enemy, but with the utmof precaution.

6 Never poft yourfelf near a place where you may be overlooked or hetd in fubjection.
7 Never expofe your fink, but always endeavour to gain that of the enemy.

8 Never pof yourfelf in fuch a fituation as will permit the enemy to ${ }^{\circ}$ act on your flank, or in your rear.

9 Never poft.yourfelf with a fuperior force, where there are any means which confine or ubfruct your operations.

Io Always adapt your fituation to your force.
II There is no fituation but what may be improved.
12. That part is weakeft which is moft commanded, or eafieft of accefs.

I3 He is well pofted, whofe approaches are lefs than the grcund he occupies himfelf.
14 He is well ponted, who reduces the enemy to a particular attack.
${ }_{5}$ Let no detachments be pofted bejond the diftance of their being timely and conveniently fupported.
I6 Let all detachments have a free conmunication with thofe who are to fuftain them.

I7 Never let your detachments remain ignorant of thofe who are to fuftain them, or how they are to join you upon occafion.

I8 Ever eacamp with your face to the enemy, except at a fiege, and then to the place from whence fuccours may arrise.

1. That difpofition is beff, where each part fuftains the other.

20 Never appear in an open place or country with an inferior force. .
$2 I$ The lefs obftruetcd your profpect, the better your riew.
22 He who opens a prof pect, grants a view.

## S E C T. ViII. of ATTACK.

I OTHING zreat was ever accomplifhed, where fecrecy, difpatch,

1and reinlution were wanting.
$\approx$ There is no fuch being as an inconfidcrable enemy.
a Where your enemies are fuperior to you, wait for an opportunity to attack then feparately or detached.

4 Never make known your defigns before the inftant you are ready to carry them into execution.
5 Nothing diftracts or difunites a confederate enemy more than a thow of regard and affection for fome of its members.

6 Though it is in no man's power to command fuccefs, yet his good conduct wIII greatly contribute to it.
7 Nothing encourages an enemy more than your own imprudence.
is Never regulate your conduct by any defire or intimation of the encmy.
9. Nothing makes an cnemy more prefumptuons, or puts him fooncr off his guard, than a fecming inattention to his conduct.

To Let nothing that is little or inconfiderable divcrt you, but be always fpacious and grand in your views and defigns.

II No medium vill ever excite efteem or adiniration.
12 Omit no means to acquire a competent knowledge of the fituation. and difpofition of the enemy, and of the approaches to him.

I $3^{\circ}$ The more effenfive your meafures, the fafer you are, and the mors conliderable you biecome.

14 He acquires an advantage who deprives his enemy of one.
$x_{5}$ Where the enemy cannot be attacked with any profpect of fuccers let your operations be flich as will either greatly diftrefs him, or cibize him to alter his fitnation.

I6 Avoid making an attack where the danger is confiderable, and the fuccefs uncertain.
If Dependance upon chance is only juftifable where a delay wift make matters worfe.

I8 Never rik an acquifition in purfint of an object of lefs value.
19 Rifk nothing except your profjeet of advantage is confiderably greater than what rou may lofe.
20 That fervice will be the beft executed which has been the muft confulted.
$2 \mathrm{~T}^{2}$ There is nothing more dificulit to obtain, than the concurrence of thofe who have different views.
22 Where different interefts cla $\mathrm{f}_{\mathrm{h}}$, there can never be a zealous cooperation.

23 Never undertake an enterprize without being fuficiently prinvied with every convenience.

24 Ever provide yourelf with a referve of whatever is neceflary.
25 That fervice will be moft finceefful which is the beft appointcd.
25 On all enterprizes, carefully allot to each divifion its particular fervice.
2) Make no attack without a plan, nor before the enemy is well reconnoitercả.

28 He who makes an attack, fould ewer remember, that be is to defend at the fanse time.

29 In cafe of a repulfe, make no attack before a mothod and place of retreat are determined upon.

30 There can be no greater mifconduct, than a neglect to prepare men for what they have to do, and alfo for that which may happen to them.

3 E Every infcribed figure is lefs than that which circumferibes it.
32. The longer the fides of an ifofeles triangle, the greater the extent of its bale.

33 All objeas of an equal height, placed behind each other upon 2 declivity, will appear in front of different heights.

34 All objects of an equal heisht, placed bchind each other upon au acclivity, will be concealed by thofe in their fiont.

35 The more commanding your fituation, the better effect your attack will have.

36 That attack will have the beft effect, which is the mof pewerful and beft fultainced.

37 The weaker your oppofition, the furer your fuccefs.
. 38 A ny active force will fooner and more eafily overcome a leffer refiftance than a greater.
39. The fuccefs of a fudden attack chiefly denends upon its rigour and rapidity.

40 Never let Mip the opportunity of atcacking your enemy, while he is unprepared or in the leaft diforder:

41 Where you make an impreffion, rapidly purfue your advantage.
42 Never give the enemy time to recover from any fudden furprize or diforder inso which you fhall throw him.
43 Never puriue the enemy beyond the diflance of your being convenie:itly fupported, or to a place where an ambufcade may be formed.

44 Pofiefs the capital, and the dependencies will fall of courfe.
45 A victory obtained by generofity and juffice, is infinitely more Elorious than one acquired by force. Where you are to choofe, prefer what is folid to what is fuperficial or fplendid.
$4{ }^{6}$ 'There is mor: judgment in improving a victory, than in gaining it. An action is to be valued more for its confequence, than for itfelf.

47 A victory uhtained by temerity is often adhrircd, though nerer worthy of praife.

43 Succefs, however obtained, generally meets with applaufe.
49 Succefs, too often occafions a deftructive confidence.
50 Ever guard againft making an encmy defperate.
SI Never publicly cenfure the mifconduct of the enemy, lef you fould provoxe him to revenge, or excite him to behare better on a future occafion.

52 There is nothing nore pernicious and difgraceful, than a fpirit of rapine in an army.

53 Nothing more effecually prevents a revolt, than juftice and humanity.
54 "Brave minds, howe'er at war, are fecret friends,
"Their gen'rous difcord with the battle ends."

## S E C T. IX. <br> Of DEFENCE.

'TH IE principles of defence are founded upon thofe of attack. ${ }_{2}$ He can beft defend, who can hell attack.
3 Defence attend, to the whole, attack to a part.
4 Without atiention to the parts, the whole can never be preferved.
is He who examines well his own condition, contributes the more to his défence and prefervation.

6 He who woulu make a good defence, muff provide himfelf by times with every neceffary.
7 It is a bad fituation which yields no refource.
3 The contempt of a fubtle enemy is one of the greateft advantages you can give him.
9 Omir nothing to obftruct the progrefs and defigns of the enemy.
ro Whatever diftreffes, do always obftruct.
1f. Never fuffer the eneny to have any accefs to you, which is not cither defended or obftru£ed. Never leave a pats unguarded, or unattended, by which the enemy can approach.
12 That attack has lealt effect, which is moft obfrueted.
$I_{3}$ Never fuffer the enemy, if you can prevent him, to reconnoitre sour fituation, or the ground between you and him.

14 Never be intinidated, or drawn from your duty, by any threats or allurements of the enemy.
1 15 A generous enemy, like the prince you Serve, will applaud and admire a noble defence.

## A P P E N D I X.

16 He is the moft fecure, who is the moft on his guard.
17 Never be confident of fafety, while there is a poffibility of danger. 18 That which is ftrong in itfelf, becomes weak by feparation.
19 The more compact any body is in itfelf, the more impregnable it becomes.
20 Common danger begets common intereft.
21 There is no pofition fo defenfible as a dires? oppofition.
22 The greater diftance at which you can annoy the enemy, the better defence you will be able to make.
23 The more extenfive your front, the more defenfible you become,
24 He defends beft who covers moft.
25 Never attempt to defend what cannot be defended.
26 Never expofe yourfelf where there is no occafion.
27 Nothing guards more effectually againt a furprize, than detached parties on all quarters.

28 Upon an alarm, firft put yourfelf in order, and then detach parties to reconnoitre.
29 Where there is not too great a fuperiority, it is better to meet an attack than to receive it.
30 Cavalry are of little confequence againft infantry that is well difpofed or under cover.
3 I Regard no treaty, while hoffilities continue.
32 Where, you have a defile to retreat through. poffefs by times its inlet.
33 Nothing proclaims more the reputation of an oficer, than a judicious retreat.

34 He who viclates his parole, not only renders himfelf infamous, but injures others.

## C $\quad \mathrm{O} \quad \mathrm{N} \quad \mathrm{T}=\mathrm{E} \quad \mathrm{N} \quad \mathrm{T} \quad \mathrm{S}$.

C. H A P. I.
Sect. ${ }_{1} \mathrm{~F}_{\mathrm{F} \text { drefs }}$
Art. I Of cloathirgxo

- 2 Of convenienceib
- 3 Of appearancex6
Sect. Il Ofarms
Art. I Of the bayonetI8ib
- 2 Of the firelock22
Sect. III Of accoutrements
C H A P. II.
The duty of the Corporal28
SECT. I Inftructions ..... ib
Sect. II Of refpect to fuperiors ..... $29^{\circ}$
Art. I Of deportment ..... 30
- 2 Of the fanding falute$3 I$
- 3 Of the paffing falute ..... 32
Sect III To fandib
Art. I Of ftanding erect ..... 33
- 2 Of planting the feet ..... 34
Sect. IV The facings ..... 35
Sect. V To march ..... 39
Art. I To balance the bodyib
22 To ground the foot ..... 40
- 3 To limit the ftep ..... 4 I
- 4 To preferve equality ..... of pace. ..... ib
Four propofitions on the regularityof ftepping and forming theranks42
Art. 5 Of marching by filcs, wheel- ing, \&c.47
C H A P. III.
Duty of the Serjeant.
SECT. I Inftructions in twentyparticulars59
Sect. II The parade exercife, withufcful obfervations thercon66
C H A P. IV.

Duty and inftructions of the AdjutantII7
The method of performing the dif-
ferent kinds of parapet and re-joicing firesI44
SEct.III Of the column, exemplifi-
ed in a viriety of cafes ..... 145
Of paffing a bridge ..... 183
$24^{\circ}$
The fquare formed oút of one bat-talion, confifting of four granddivifions exemplified, in twenty-feven particularsI98
C H A P. V.

The exercife as it is to be performed by fignal or word of command from the major or from any other officer 216
A Sketch of a battalion confifting of ten companies, in each fixtynine privates and three corporals, making in the whole feven hundred and twenty men rank and file, drawn up in reviewing order and according to feniority $\quad 227$
Rules for telling off the battalion and for polting the officers both at exercife and for action 228
A Sketch of a battalion formed for action or exercife, with the ranks at whole diftance or open order
Signals, words of command, and particular references 235
Rules, maxims, and obfervations, for the government, conduct, and difcipline of an army 155

$$
F I N I S
$$



> A NEW SYSTEM OF MILITARY DISCIPLINE, FOUNDED UPON PRINCIPLE. by a General Officer Philadelphia, 1776

Bound in full browm leather with five raised bands.

When received the leather was rotten, buth bnards were detached, and the headcaps were missing. The original plain endpapers were badly stained and torn. The sewing was lonse but sound.

## Treatment

The sewing was reinforced with new, stabjoint endsheets of Fabrianc Ingres. The spine was reglued with a $50 / 50$ mixture of methylcellulose and Jade 403. A hollow tube of Yermalife Text was molded over the raised cords.

Ellen Owings, 1985

